

NWA-3160 Series

IEEE 802.11a/b/g Business WLAN Access Point

IEEE 802.11b/g Business WLAN Access Point

IEEE WirelessN Business WLAN Access Point

User's Guide

Version 3.60

03/2008

Edition 3

DEFAULT LOGIN

IP Address	http://192.168.1.2
Password	1234



About This User's Guide

Intended Audience

This manual is intended for people who want to configure the ZyXEL Device using the web configurator. You should have at least a basic knowledge of TCP/IP networking concepts and topology.

Related Documentation

- Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guide is designed to help you get up and running right away. It contains information on setting up your network and configuring for Internet access.

- Supporting Disk

Refer to the included CD for support documents.

- ZyXEL Web Site

Please refer to www.zyxel.com for additional support documentation and product certifications.

User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. Send all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to the following address, or use e-mail instead. Thank you!

The Technical Writing Team,
ZyXEL Communications Corp.,
6 Innovation Road II,
Science-Based Industrial Park,
Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan.

E-mail: techwriters@zyxel.com.tw

Document Conventions

Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this User's Guide.



Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.












Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.

Syntax Conventions

- The NWA-3160, NWA-3163 or NWA-3165 may be referred to as the “ZyXEL Device”, the “device” or the “system” in this User's Guide.
- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A key stroke is denoted by square brackets and uppercase text, for example, [ENTER] means the “enter” or “return” key on your keyboard.
- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters and then press the [ENTER] key. “Select” or “choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- A right angle bracket (>) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Maintenance > Log > Log Setting** means you first click **Maintenance** in the navigation panel, then the **Log** sub menu and finally the **Log Setting** tab to get to that screen.
- Units of measurement may denote the “metric” value or the “scientific” value. For example, “k” for kilo may denote “1000” or “1024”, “M” for mega may denote “1000000” or “1048576” and so on.
- “e.g.” is a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.” means “that is” or “in other words”.

Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this User's Guide may use the following generic icons. The ZyXEL Device icon is not an exact representation of your device.

ZyXEL Device 	Computer 	Notebook computer 
Server 	DSLAM 	Firewall 
Telephone 	Switch 	Router 

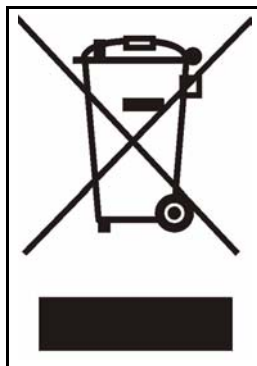
Safety Warnings



For your safety, be sure to read and follow all warning notices and instructions.

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device.
- Connect the power adaptor or cord to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the power outlet.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Antenna Warning! This device meets ETSI and FCC certification requirements when using the included antenna(s). Only use the included antenna(s).
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical lines, gas or water pipes will be damaged.
- The PoE (Power over Ethernet) devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.

This product is recyclable. Dispose of it properly.



Contents Overview

Introduction	31
Introducing the ZyXEL Device	33
Introducing the Web Configurator	43
Tutorial	47
Status Screens	75
Management Mode	79
AP Controller Mode (NWA-3160 Only)	83
The Web Configurator	97
System Screens	99
Wireless Configuration	105
Wireless Security Configuration	123
MBSSID and SSID	139
Other Wireless Configuration	147
IP Screen	157
Rogue AP	159
Remote Management Screens	165
Internal RADIUS Server	177
Certificates	183
Log Screens	201
VLAN	209
Maintenance	227
SMT, Troubleshooting and Specifications	235
Introducing the SMT	237
General Setup	243
LAN Setup	245
SNMP Configuration	247
System Password	249
System Information and Diagnosis	251
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance	257
System Maintenance and Information	263
Troubleshooting	271
Product Specifications	277
Appendices and Index	285

Table of Contents

About This User's Guide	3
Document Conventions.....	4
Safety Warnings.....	6
Contents Overview	9
Table of Contents.....	11
List of Figures	21
List of Tables.....	27
 Part I: Introduction.....	 31
 Chapter 1	
Introducing the ZyXEL Device	33
1.1 Introducing the ZyXEL Device	33
1.2 Applications for the ZyXEL Device	33
1.2.1 Access Point	34
1.2.2 Bridge / Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	34
1.2.3 AP + Bridge (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	35
1.2.4 MBSSID	36
1.2.5 Pre-Configured SSID Profiles	37
1.3 CAPWAP (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	38
1.4 Ways to Manage the ZyXEL Device	38
1.5 Good Habits for Managing the ZyXEL Device	38
1.6 Hardware Connections	39
1.6.1 Antennas	39
1.7 LEDs	39
 Chapter 2	
Introducing the Web Configurator	43
2.1 Accessing the Web Configurator	43
2.2 Resetting the ZyXEL Device	44
2.2.1 Methods of Restoring Factory-Defaults	45
2.3 Navigating the Web Configurator	45

Chapter 3	
Tutorial	47
3.1 How to Configure the Wireless LAN	47
3.1.1 Choosing the Wireless Mode	47
3.1.2 Wireless LAN Configuration Overview	48
3.1.3 Further Reading	50
3.2 How to Configure Multiple Wireless Networks	50
3.2.1 Change the Operating Mode	51
3.2.2 Configure the VoIP Network	53
3.2.2.1 Set Up Security for the VoIP Profile	54
3.2.2.2 Activate the VoIP Profile	56
3.2.3 Configure the Guest Network	56
3.2.3.1 Set Up Security for the Guest Profile	57
3.2.3.2 Set up Layer 2 Isolation	58
3.2.3.3 Activate the Guest Profile	59
3.2.4 Testing the Wireless Networks	59
3.3 How to Set Up and Use Rogue AP Detection	60
3.3.1 Set Up and Save a Friendly AP list	62
3.3.2 Activate Periodic Rogue AP Detection	64
3.3.3 Set Up E-mail Logs	65
3.3.4 Configure Your Other Access Points	66
3.3.5 Test the Setup	66
3.4 Using Multiple MAC Filters and L-2 Isolation Profiles	67
3.4.1 Scenario	67
3.4.2 Your Requirements	67
3.4.3 Setup	68
3.4.4 Configure the SERVER_1 Network	68
3.4.5 Configure the SERVER_2 Network	71
3.4.6 Checking your Settings and Testing the Configuration	72
3.4.6.1 Checking Settings	72
3.4.6.2 Testing the Configuration	72
 Chapter 4	
Status Screens	75
4.1 The Status Screen	75
 Chapter 5	
Management Mode.....	79
5.1 About CAPWAP	79
5.1.1 CAPWAP Discovery and Management	79
5.1.2 CAPWAP and DHCP	80
5.1.3 CAPWAP and IP Subnets	80
5.1.4 Notes on CAPWAP	81

5.2 The Management Mode Screen	81
Chapter 6	
AP Controller Mode (NWA-3160 Only)	83
6.1 Status Screen	83
6.1.1 The AP List Status Screen	84
6.1.2 The AP Statistics Screen	85
6.1.3 The AP Association List Screen	86
6.1.4 The SSID Information Screen	86
6.2 Navigation Bar	87
6.3 The Controller Screens	88
6.3.1 The AP Lists Screen	88
6.3.2 The AP Lists Edit Screen	90
6.3.3 The Configuration Screen	91
6.4 The Profile Edit Screens	92
6.4.1 The Radio Profile Screen	92
6.5 The Radio Profile Edit Screen	93
 Part II: The Web Configurator	 97
Chapter 7	
System Screens	99
7.1 System Overview	99
7.2 Configuring General Setup	99
7.3 Administrator Authentication on RADIUS	100
7.3.1 Configuring the Password	100
7.4 Configuring Time Setting	102
7.5 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List	104
 Chapter 8	
Wireless Configuration.....	105
8.1 Wireless LAN Overview	105
8.1.1 BSS	105
8.1.2 ESS	106
8.2 Wireless LAN Basics	106
8.3 Quality of Service	107
8.3.1 WMM QoS	107
8.3.1.1 WMM QoS Priorities	107
8.3.2 ATC	107
8.3.3 ATC+WMM	108
8.3.3.1 ATC+WMM from LAN to WLAN	108

8.3.3.2 ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN	109
8.3.4 Type Of Service (ToS)	109
8.3.4.1 DiffServ	109
8.3.4.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	109
8.3.5 ToS (Type of Service) and WMM QoS	110
8.4 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)	110
8.4.1 Rapid STP	110
8.4.2 STP Terminology	111
8.4.3 How STP Works	111
8.4.4 STP Port States	112
8.5 DFS	112
8.6 Wireless Screen Overview	112
8.7 Configuring Wireless Settings	113
8.7.1 Access Point Mode: NWA-3160 and NWA-3163	113
8.7.2 Access Point Mode: NWA-3165	114
8.7.3 Bridge/Repeater Mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	116
8.7.4 AP+Bridge Mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	120
8.7.5 MBSSID Mode	121
 Chapter 9	
Wireless Security Configuration	123
9.1 Wireless Security Overview	123
9.1.1 Encryption	123
9.1.2 Restricted Access	123
9.1.3 Hide Identity	123
9.1.4 WEP Encryption	123
9.2 802.1x Overview	124
9.3 EAP Authentication Overview	124
9.4 Introduction to WPA	124
9.4.1 User Authentication	125
9.4.2 Encryption	125
9.4.3 WPA(2)-PSK Application Example	125
9.5 WPA(2) with External RADIUS Application Example	126
9.6 Security Modes	127
9.7 Wireless Client WPA Supplicants	128
9.8 Wireless Security Effectiveness	128
9.9 Configuring Security	128
9.9.1 Security: WEP	129
9.9.2 Security: 802.1x Only	130
9.9.3 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit	131
9.9.4 Security: WPA	133
9.9.5 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX	133
9.9.6 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK-MIX	135

9.10 Introduction to RADIUS	136
9.11 Configuring RADIUS	136
Chapter 10	
MBSSID and SSID	139
10.1 Wireless LAN Infrastructures	139
10.1.1 MBSSID	139
10.1.2 Notes on Multiple BSS	139
10.1.3 Multiple BSS Example	139
10.1.4 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example	139
10.1.5 Configuring Multiple BSSs	140
10.2 SSID	142
10.2.1 The SSID Screen	142
10.2.2 Configuring SSID	143
Chapter 11	
Other Wireless Configuration	147
11.1 Layer-2 Isolation Introduction	147
11.2 The Layer-2 Isolation Screen	148
11.3 Configuring Layer-2 Isolation	149
11.3.1 Layer-2 Isolation Examples	150
11.3.1.1 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1	151
11.3.1.2 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2	151
11.4 The MAC Filter Screen	152
11.4.1 Configuring MAC Filtering	153
11.5 Configuring Roaming	154
11.5.1 Requirements for Roaming	155
Chapter 12	
IP Screen.....	157
12.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults	157
12.2 TCP/IP Parameters	157
12.2.1 WAN IP Address Assignment	157
12.3 Configuring IP Settings	158
Chapter 13	
Rogue AP.....	159
13.1 Rogue AP Introduction	159
13.2 Rogue AP Examples	159
13.2.1 “Honeypot” Attack	160
13.3 Configuring Rogue AP Detection (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	161
13.3.1 Rogue AP: Configuration	162
13.3.2 Rogue AP: Friendly AP	162

13.3.3 Rogue AP List	163
Chapter 14	
Remote Management Screens	165
14.1 Remote Management Overview	165
14.1.1 Remote Management Limitations	165
14.1.2 System Timeout	165
14.2 Configuring Telnet	166
14.3 Configuring FTP	167
14.4 Configuring WWW	168
14.5 SNMP	169
14.5.1 Supported MIBs	170
14.5.2 SNMP Traps	171
14.6 SNMP Trap Interface Index	171
14.6.1 SNMP v3 and Security	172
14.6.2 Configuring SNMP	172
14.6.2.1 The SNMPv3 User Profile Screen (NWA-3165 Only)	174
Chapter 15	
Internal RADIUS Server	177
15.1 Internal RADIUS Overview	177
15.2 Internal RADIUS Server Setting	177
15.3 Trusted AP Overview	179
15.4 Configuring Trusted AP	180
15.5 Configuring Trusted Users	181
Chapter 16	
Certificates	183
16.1 Certificates Overview	183
16.1.1 Advantages of Certificates	184
16.2 Self-signed Certificates	184
16.3 Verifying a Certificate	184
16.3.1 Checking the Fingerprint of a Certificate on Your Computer	184
16.4 Configuration Summary	185
16.5 My Certificates	185
16.6 Certificate File Formats	187
16.7 Importing a Certificate	188
16.8 Creating a Certificate	189
16.9 My Certificate Details	191
16.10 Trusted CAs	194
16.11 Importing a Trusted CA's Certificate	195
16.12 Trusted CA Certificate Details	196

Chapter 17	
Log Screens	201
17.1 Configuring View Log	201
17.2 Configuring Log Settings	202
17.3 Example Log Messages	204
17.4 Log Commands	206
17.4.1 Configuring What You Want the ZyXEL Device to Log	206
17.4.2 Displaying Logs	206
17.5 Log Command Example	207
Chapter 18	
VLAN	209
18.1 VLAN	209
18.1.1 Management VLAN ID	209
18.1.2 VLAN Tagging	209
18.2 Configuring VLAN	210
18.2.1 Wireless VLAN	210
18.2.2 RADIUS VLAN	212
18.2.3 Configuring Management VLAN Example	213
18.2.4 Configuring Microsoft's IAS Server Example	216
18.2.4.1 Configuring VLAN Groups	216
18.2.4.2 Configuring Remote Access Policies	217
18.2.5 Second Rx VLAN ID Example	224
18.2.5.1 Second Rx VLAN Setup Example	224
Chapter 19	
Maintenance	227
19.1 Maintenance Overview	227
19.2 System Status Screen (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	227
19.2.1 System Statistics	228
19.3 Association List	228
19.4 Channel Usage (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	229
19.5 F/W Upload Screen	230
19.6 Configuration Screen	232
19.6.1 Backup Configuration	232
19.6.2 Restore Configuration	233
19.6.3 Back to Factory Defaults	234
19.7 Restart Screen	234
Part III: SMT, Troubleshooting and Specifications.....	235

Chapter 20	
Introducing the SMT	237
20.1 Introduction to the SMT	237
20.2 Accessing the SMT via the Console Port	237
20.2.1 Initial Screen	237
20.2.2 Entering the Password	238
20.3 Connect to your ZyXEL Device Using Telnet	239
20.4 Changing the System Password	239
20.5 SMT Menu Overview Example	240
20.6 Navigating the SMT Interface	240
20.6.1 System Management Terminal Interface Summary	242
Chapter 21	
General Setup.....	243
21.1 General Setup	243
21.1.1 Procedure To Configure Menu 1	243
Chapter 22	
LAN Setup.....	245
22.1 LAN Setup	245
22.2 TCP/IP Ethernet Setup	245
Chapter 23	
SNMP Configuration	247
23.1 SNMP Configuration	247
Chapter 24	
System Password	249
24.1 System Password	249
Chapter 25	
System Information and Diagnosis.....	251
25.1 System Status	251
25.2 System Information	253
25.2.1 System Information	253
25.2.2 Console Port Speed	254
25.3 Log and Trace	254
25.3.1 Viewing Error Log	254
25.4 Diagnostic	255
Chapter 26	
Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance	257
26.1 Filename Conventions	257

26.2 Backup Configuration	258
26.2.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt	258
26.2.2 Backup Configuration Using TFTP	259
26.2.3 Example: TFTP Command	260
26.3 Restore Configuration	260
26.3.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt Example	260
26.3.2 TFTP File Upload	261
26.3.3 Example: TFTP Command	262
Chapter 27	
System Maintenance and Information	263
27.1 Command Interpreter Mode	263
27.1.1 Command Syntax	264
27.1.2 Command Usage	264
27.1.3 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection	264
27.1.3.1 Configuring Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection: Example ..	264
27.2 Time and Date Setting	265
27.2.1 Resetting the Time	266
27.3 Remote Management Setup	266
27.3.1 Telnet	266
27.3.2 FTP	267
27.3.3 Web	267
27.3.4 Remote Management Setup	267
27.3.5 Remote Management Limitations	269
27.4 System Timeout	269
Chapter 28	
Troubleshooting.....	271
28.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs	271
28.2 ZyXEL Device Access and Login	272
28.3 Internet Access	274
28.4 Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting	275
Chapter 29	
Product Specifications	277
 Part IV: Appendices and Index	 285
Appendix A Setting up Your Computer's IP Address.....	287
Appendix B Wireless LANs	299

Appendix C Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions	313
Appendix D IP Addresses and Subnetting	319
Appendix E Text File Based Auto Configuration.....	327
Appendix F Legal Information	335
Appendix G Customer Support	339
Index.....	345

List of Figures

Figure 1 Access Point Application	34
Figure 2 Bridge Application	35
Figure 3 Repeater Application	35
Figure 4 AP+Bridge Application	36
Figure 5 Multiple BSSs	37
Figure 6 Main Antenna	39
Figure 7 LEDs	40
Figure 8 Change Password Screen	44
Figure 9 Replace Certificate Screen	44
Figure 10 The Status Screen of the Web Configurator	45
Figure 11 Configuring Wireless LAN	49
Figure 12 Tutorial: Example MBSSID Setup	51
Figure 13 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Before	52
Figure 14 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Change Mode	52
Figure 15 Tutorial: WIRELESS > SSID	53
Figure 16 Tutorial: VoIP SSID Profile Edit	54
Figure 17 Tutorial: VoIP Security	55
Figure 18 Tutorial: VoIP Security Profile Edit	55
Figure 19 Tutorial: VoIP Security: Updated	56
Figure 20 Tutorial: Activate VoIP Profile	56
Figure 21 Tutorial: Guest Edit	57
Figure 22 Tutorial: Guest Security Profile Edit	57
Figure 23 Tutorial: Guest Security: Updated	58
Figure 24 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation	58
Figure 25 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation Profile	59
Figure 26 Tutorial: Activate Guest Profile	59
Figure 27 Tutorial: Wireless Network Example	61
Figure 28 Tutorial: Friendly AP (Before Data Entry)	62
Figure 29 Tutorial: Friendly AP (After Data Entry)	63
Figure 30 Tutorial: Configuration	63
Figure 31 Tutorial: Warning	64
Figure 32 Tutorial: Save Friendly AP list	64
Figure 33 Tutorial: Periodic Rogue AP Detection	64
Figure 34 Tutorial: Log Settings	65
Figure 35 Tutorial: Example Network	67
Figure 36 Tutorial: SSID Profile	69
Figure 37 Tutorial: SSID Edit	70
Figure 38 Tutorial: Layer-2 Isolation Edit	70

Figure 39 Tutorial: MAC Filter Edit (SERVER_1)	71
Figure 40 Tutorial: SSID Profiles Activated	72
Figure 41 Tutorial: SSID Tab Correct Settings	72
Figure 42 The Status Screen	76
Figure 43 CAPWAP Network Example	79
Figure 44 CAPWAP and DHCP Option 43	80
Figure 45 The Management Mode Screen	81
Figure 46 AP Controller: the Status Screen	83
Figure 47 AP List Status	84
Figure 48 AP Statistics	85
Figure 49 AP Association List	86
Figure 50 SSID Information	87
Figure 51 AP Controller: Links	87
Figure 52 The Controller > AP Lists Screen	89
Figure 53 The Controller > AP Lists > Edit Screen	90
Figure 54 The Controller > Configuration Screen	91
Figure 55 The Profile Edit > Radio Screen	92
Figure 56 The Profile Edit > Radio > Edit Screen	93
Figure 57 System > General	99
Figure 58 SYSTEM > Password.	101
Figure 59 SYSTEM > Time Setting	102
Figure 60 Basic Service set	105
Figure 61 Extended Service Set	106
Figure 62 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field	109
Figure 63 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163)	113
Figure 64 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3165)	115
Figure 65 Bridging Example	117
Figure 66 Bridge Loop: Two Bridges Connected to Hub	117
Figure 67 Bridge Loop: Bridge Connected to Wired LAN	118
Figure 68 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	118
Figure 69 Wireless: AP+Bridge	121
Figure 70 EAP Authentication	124
Figure 71 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication	126
Figure 72 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example	127
Figure 73 Wireless > Security	129
Figure 74 WIRELESS > Security: WEP	130
Figure 75 Security: 802.1x Only	131
Figure 76 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit	132
Figure 77 Security: WPA	133
Figure 78 Security:WPA2 or WPA2-MIX	134
Figure 79 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX	135
Figure 80 RADIUS	136
Figure 81 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example	140

Figure 82 Wireless: Multiple BSS	140
Figure 83 SSID	143
Figure 84 Configuring SSID	144
Figure 85 Layer-2 Isolation Application	148
Figure 86 WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation	149
Figure 87 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration Screen	150
Figure 88 Layer-2 Isolation Example Configuration	151
Figure 89 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1	151
Figure 90 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2	152
Figure 91 WIRELESS > MAC Filter	152
Figure 92 MAC Address Filter	153
Figure 93 Roaming Example	155
Figure 94 Roaming	156
Figure 95 IP Setup	158
Figure 96 Rogue AP: Example	160
Figure 97 “Honey-pot” Attack	161
Figure 98 ROGUE AP > Configuration	162
Figure 99 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP	163
Figure 100 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP	164
Figure 101 Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network	166
Figure 102 Remote Management: Telnet	166
Figure 103 Remote Management: FTP	167
Figure 104 Remote Management: WWW	168
Figure 105 SNMP Management Model	170
Figure 106 Remote Management: SNMP	173
Figure 107 Remote Management: SNMPv3 User Profile	174
Figure 108 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen	178
Figure 109 Trusted AP Overview	180
Figure 110 Trusted AP Screen	181
Figure 111 Trusted Users Screen	182
Figure 112 Certificates on Your Computer	184
Figure 113 Certificate Details	185
Figure 114 My Certificates	186
Figure 115 My Certificate Import	188
Figure 116 My Certificate Create	189
Figure 117 My Certificate Details	192
Figure 118 Trusted CAs	194
Figure 119 Trusted CA Import	196
Figure 120 Trusted CA Details	197
Figure 121 View Log	201
Figure 122 Log Settings	203
Figure 123 WIRELESS VLAN	211
Figure 124 RADIUS VLAN	212

Figure 125 Management VLAN Configuration Example	214
Figure 126 VLAN-Aware Switch - Static VLAN	214
Figure 127 VLAN-Aware Switch	214
Figure 128 VLAN-Aware Switch - VLAN Status	215
Figure 129 VLAN Setup	215
Figure 130 New Global Security Group	217
Figure 131 Add Group Members	217
Figure 132 New Remote Access Policy for VLAN Group	218
Figure 133 Specifying Windows-Group Condition	218
Figure 134 Adding VLAN Group	219
Figure 135 Granting Permissions and User Profile Screens	219
Figure 136 Authentication Tab Settings	220
Figure 137 Encryption Tab Settings	220
Figure 138 Connection Attributes Screen	221
Figure 139 RADIUS Attribute Screen	221
Figure 140 802 Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Medium-Type	222
Figure 141 VLAN ID Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID	222
Figure 142 VLAN Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Type	223
Figure 143 Completed Advanced Tab	223
Figure 144 Second Rx VLAN ID Example	224
Figure 145 Configuring SSID: Second Rx VLAN ID Example	225
Figure 146 System Status	227
Figure 147 System Status: Show Statistics	228
Figure 148 Association List	229
Figure 149 Channel Usage	229
Figure 150 Firmware Upload	230
Figure 151 Firmware Upload In Process	231
Figure 152 Network Temporarily Disconnected	231
Figure 153 Firmware Upload Error	232
Figure 154 Configuration	232
Figure 155 Configuration Upload Successful	233
Figure 156 Network Temporarily Disconnected	233
Figure 157 Configuration Upload Error	234
Figure 158 Reset Warning Message	234
Figure 159 Restart Screen	234
Figure 160 Initial Screen	238
Figure 161 Password Screen	239
Figure 162 Login Screen	239
Figure 163 Menu 23 System Password	240
Figure 164 SMT Main Menu	242
Figure 165 Menu 1 General Setup	243
Figure 166 Menu 3 LAN Setup	245
Figure 167 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup	245

Figure 168 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration	247
Figure 169 Menu 23 System Password	249
Figure 170 Menu 24 System Maintenance	251
Figure 171 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status	252
Figure 172 Menu 24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed	253
Figure 173 Menu 24.2.1 System Information: Information	253
Figure 174 Menu 24.2.2 System Maintenance: Change Console Port Speed	254
Figure 175 Menu 24.3 System Maintenance: Log and Trace	255
Figure 176 Sample Error and Information Messages	255
Figure 177 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance: Diagnostic	255
Figure 178 FTP Session Example	259
Figure 179 FTP Session Example	261
Figure 180 Menu 24 System Maintenance	263
Figure 181 Valid CI Commands	264
Figure 182 Menu 24.10 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting	265
Figure 183 Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network	267
Figure 184 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control	268
Figure 185 Wall-mounting Example	281
Figure 186 Masonry Plug and M4 Tap Screw	281
Figure 187 WIndows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration	288
Figure 188 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address	289
Figure 189 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration	290
Figure 190 Windows XP: Start Menu	291
Figure 191 Windows XP: Control Panel	291
Figure 192 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties	292
Figure 193 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties	292
Figure 194 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings	293
Figure 195 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties	294
Figure 196 Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu	295
Figure 197 Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP	295
Figure 198 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu	296
Figure 199 Macintosh OS X: Network	297
Figure 200 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network	299
Figure 201 Basic Service Set	300
Figure 202 Infrastructure WLAN	301
Figure 203 RTS/CTS	302
Figure 204 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example	309
Figure 205 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication	310
Figure 206 Pop-up Blocker	313
Figure 207 Internet Options: Privacy	314
Figure 208 Internet Options: Privacy	315
Figure 209 Pop-up Blocker Settings	315
Figure 210 Internet Options: Security	316

Figure 211 Security Settings - Java Scripting	317
Figure 212 Security Settings - Java	317
Figure 213 Java (Sun)	318
Figure 214 Network Number and Host ID	320
Figure 215 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting	322
Figure 216 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting	323
Figure 217 Text File Based Auto Configuration	327
Figure 218 Configuration File Format	329
Figure 219 WEP Configuration File Example	330
Figure 220 802.1X Configuration File Example	331
Figure 221 WPA-PSK Configuration File Example	331
Figure 222 WPA Configuration File Example	332
Figure 223 Wlan Configuration File Example	333

List of Tables

Table 1 Models Covered	33
Table 2 LEDs	40
Table 3 Tutorial: Example Information	51
Table 4 Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information	61
Table 5 Tutorial: Friendly AP Information	62
Table 6 Tutorial: SSID Profile Security Settings	68
Table 7 Tutorial: Example Network MAC Addresses	68
Table 8 Tutorial: Example User MAC Addresses	68
Table 9 Tutorial: SERVER_2 Network Information	71
Table 10 The Status Screen	76
Table 11 The Management Mode Screen	81
Table 12 AP Controller: the Status Screen	84
Table 13 AP List Status	85
Table 14 AP Statistics	85
Table 15 AP Association List	86
Table 16 AP Association List	87
Table 17 Navigation Bar Labels	87
Table 18 The Controller > AP Lists Screen	89
Table 19 The Controller > AP Lists > Edit Screen	90
Table 20 The Controller > Configuration Screen	91
Table 21 The Profile Edit > Radio Screen	92
Table 22 The Profile Edit > Radio > Edit Screen	94
Table 23 System > General	99
Table 24 Password	101
Table 25 SYSTEM > Time Setting	103
Table 26 Default Time Servers	104
Table 27 WMM QoS Priorities	107
Table 28 Typical Packet Sizes	108
Table 29 Automatic Traffic Classifier Priorities	108
Table 30 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (LAN to WLAN)	109
Table 31 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (WLAN to LAN)	109
Table 32 ToS and IEEE 802.1d to WMM QoS Priority Level Mapping	110
Table 33 STP Path Costs	111
Table 34 STP Port States	112
Table 35 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163)	113
Table 36 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3165)	115
Table 37 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)	119
Table 38 Security Modes	127

Table 39 Wireless Security Levels	128
Table 40 WIRELESS > Security	129
Table 41 Security: WEP	130
Table 42 Security: 802.1x Only	131
Table 43 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit	132
Table 44 Security: WPA	133
Table 45 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX	134
Table 46 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX	135
Table 47 RADIUS	136
Table 48 Wireless: Multiple BSS	141
Table 49 SSID	143
Table 50 Configuring SSID	144
Table 51 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation	149
Table 52 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration	150
Table 53 WIRELESS > MAC Filter	153
Table 54 MAC Address Filter	154
Table 55 Private IP Address Ranges	157
Table 56 IP Setup	158
Table 57 ROGUE AP > Configuration	162
Table 58 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP	163
Table 59 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP	164
Table 60 Remote Management Overview	165
Table 61 Remote Management: Telnet	166
Table 62 Remote Management: FTP	167
Table 63 Remote Management: WWW	168
Table 64 SNMP Traps	171
Table 65 SNMP Interface Index to Physical and Virtual Port Mapping	171
Table 66 Remote Management: SNMP	173
Table 67 Remote Management: SNMP User Profile	175
Table 68 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen Setting	178
Table 69 Trusted AP	181
Table 70 Trusted Users	182
Table 71 My Certificates	186
Table 72 My Certificate Import	188
Table 73 My Certificate Create	189
Table 74 My Certificate Details	192
Table 75 Trusted CAs	195
Table 76 Trusted CA Import	196
Table 77 Trusted CA Details	197
Table 78 View Log	201
Table 79 Log Settings	203
Table 80 System Maintenance Logs	204
Table 81 ICMP Notes	205

Table 82 Sys log	206
Table 83 Log Categories and Available Settings	206
Table 84 WIRELESS VLAN	211
Table 85 RADIUS VLAN	213
Table 86 Standard RADIUS Attributes	216
Table 87 System Status	227
Table 88 System Status: Show Statistics	228
Table 89 Association List	229
Table 90 Channel Usage	230
Table 91 Firmware Upload	230
Table 92 Restore Configuration	233
Table 93 SMT Menus Overview	240
Table 94 Main Menu Commands	241
Table 95 Main Menu Summary	242
Table 96 Menu 1 General Setup	243
Table 97 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup	246
Table 98 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration	247
Table 99 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status	252
Table 100 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information	253
Table 101 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance Menu: Diagnostic	256
Table 102 Filename Conventions	258
Table 103 General Commands for Third Party FTP Clients	259
Table 104 General Commands for Third Party TFTP Clients	260
Table 105 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection Commands	264
Table 106 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting	265
Table 107 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control	268
Table 108 Hardware Specifications	277
Table 109 Firmware Specifications	279
Table 110 North American Plug Standards	281
Table 111 European Plug Standards	282
Table 112 United Kingdom Plug Standards	282
Table 113 Australia and New Zealand Plug Standards	282
Table 114 Power over Ethernet Injector Specifications	282
Table 115 Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments	282
Table 116 IEEE 802.11g	303
Table 117 Wireless Security Levels	304
Table 118 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types	307
Table 119 Wireless Security Relational Matrix	310
Table 120 Subnet Masks	320
Table 121 Subnet Masks	321
Table 122 Maximum Host Numbers	321
Table 123 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation	321
Table 124 Subnet 1	323

Table 125 Subnet 2	324
Table 126 Subnet 3	324
Table 127 Subnet 4	324
Table 128 Eight Subnets	324
Table 129 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning	325
Table 130 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning	325
Table 131 Auto Configuration by DHCP	328
Table 132 Manual Configuration	328
Table 133 Configuration via SNMP	328
Table 134 Displaying the File Version	329
Table 135 Displaying the File Version	329
Table 136 Displaying the Auto Configuration Status	330

PART I

Introduction

[Introducing the ZyXEL Device \(33\)](#)

[Introducing the Web Configurator \(43\)](#)

[Tutorial \(47\)](#)

[Status Screens \(75\)](#)

[Management Mode \(79\)](#)

[AP Controller Mode \(NWA-3160 Only\) \(83\)](#)

Introducing the ZyXEL Device

This chapter introduces the main applications and features of the ZyXEL Device. It also introduces the ways you can manage the ZyXEL Device.

1.1 Introducing the ZyXEL Device

Your ZyXEL Device extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users.

It is highly versatile, supporting multiple BSSIDs simultaneously (eight in the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163, four in the NWA-3165). The Quality of Service (QoS) features allow you to prioritize time-sensitive or highly important applications such as VoIP.

Multiple security profiles allow you to easily assign different types of security to groups of users. The ZyXEL Device controls network access with MAC address filtering, rogue AP detection (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only), layer 2 isolation and an internal authentication server. It also provides a high level of network traffic security, supporting IEEE 802.1x, Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), WPA2 and WEP data encryption.

Your ZyXEL Device is easy to install, configure and use. The embedded Web-based configurator enables simple, straightforward management and maintenance.

See the Quick Start Guide for instructions on how to make hardware connections.

At the time of writing, this User's Guide covers the following models.

Table 1 Models Covered

NWA-3160: IEEE 802.11a/b/g Business WLAN Access Point
NWA-3163: IEEE 802.11b/g Business WLAN Access Point
NWA-3165: WirelessN Business WLAN Access Point

1.2 Applications for the ZyXEL Device

The ZyXEL Device can be configured to use the following WLAN operating modes

- 1 AP
- 2 Bridge/Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)
- 3 AP+Bridge (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)
- 4 MBSSID

Applications for each operating mode are shown below.

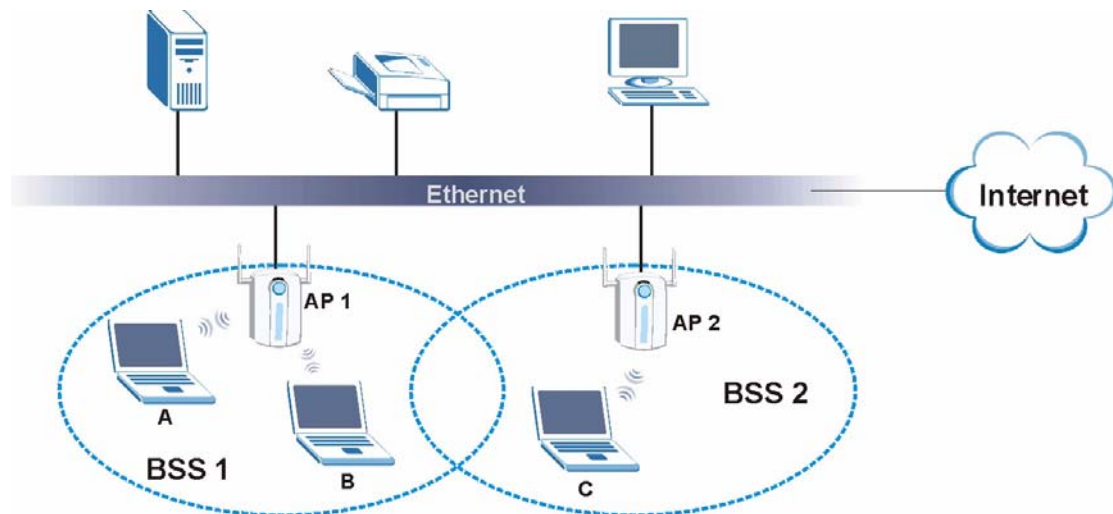


A different channel should be configured for each WLAN interface to reduce the effects of radio interference.

1.2.1 Access Point

The ZyXEL Device is an ideal access solution for wireless Internet connection. A typical Internet access application for your ZyXEL Device is shown as follows. Stations A, B and C can access the wired network through the ZyXEL Devices.

Figure 1 Access Point Application



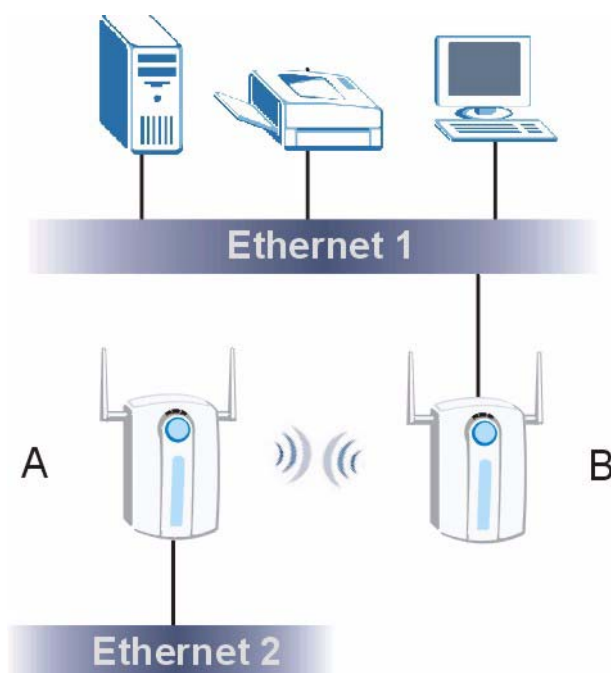
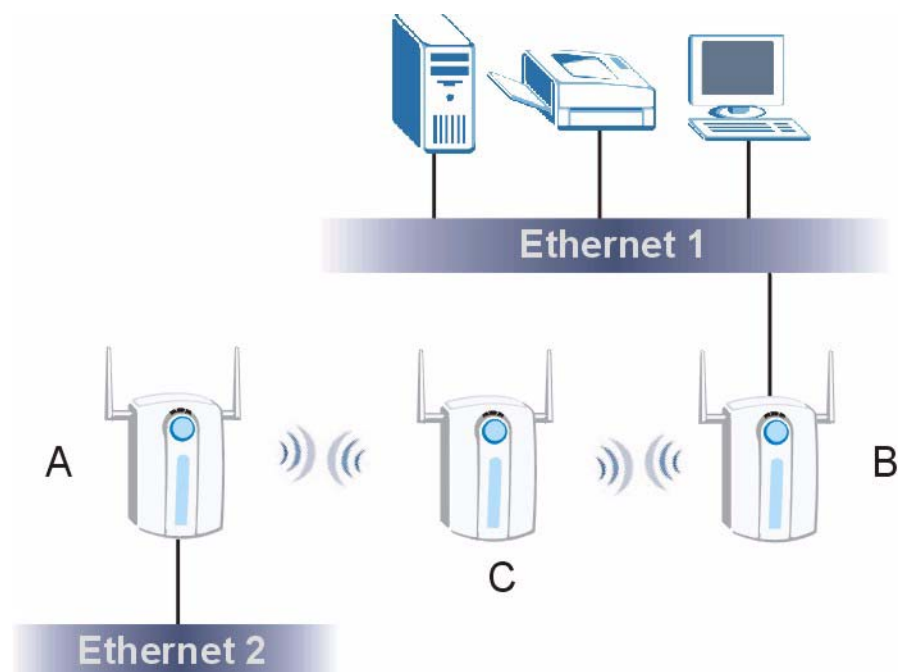
1.2.2 Bridge / Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

The ZyXEL Device can act as a wireless network bridge and establish wireless links with other APs. In the figure below, the two ZyXEL Devices (**A** and **B**) are connected to independent wired networks and have a bridge connection (**A** can communicate with **B**) at the same time. A ZyXEL Device in repeater mode (**C**) has no Ethernet connection. When the ZyXEL Device is in bridge mode, you should enable STP to prevent bridge loops.

When the ZyXEL Device is in **Bridge / Repeater** mode, security between APs (the Wireless Distribution System or WDS) is independent of the security between the wireless stations and the AP. If you do not enable WDS security, traffic between APs is not encrypted. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 8.7.3 on page 116](#) for more details.

Once the security settings of peer sides match one another, the connection between devices is made.

At the time of writing, WDS security is compatible with other ZyXEL access points only. Refer to your other access point's documentation for details.

Figure 2 Bridge Application**Figure 3** Repeater Application

1.2.3 AP + Bridge (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

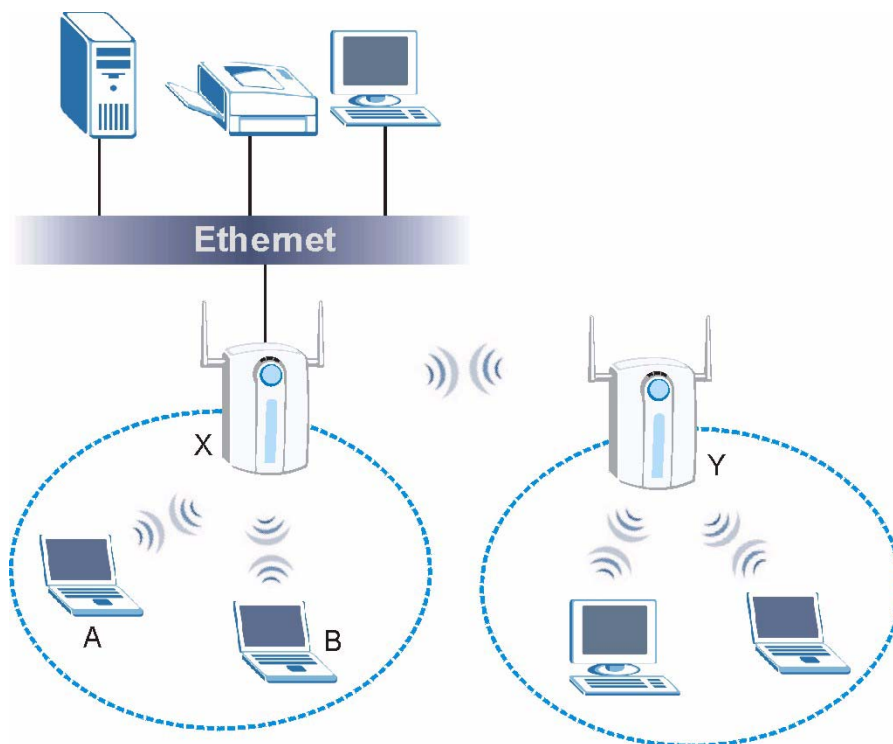
In **AP+Bridge** mode, the ZyXEL Device supports both AP and bridge connection at the same time.

In the figure below, **A** and **B** use **X** as an **AP** to access the wired network, while **X** and **Y** communicate in bridge mode.

When the ZyXEL Device is in **AP + Bridge** mode, security between APs (the Wireless Distribution System or WDS) is independent of the security between the wireless stations and the AP. If you do not enable WDS security, traffic between APs is not encrypted. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key. See [Section 8.7.4 on page 120](#) for more details.

Unless specified, the term “security settings” refers to the traffic between the wireless stations and the ZyXEL Device.

Figure 4 AP+Bridge Application



1.2.4 MBSSID

A BSS (Basic Service Set) is the set of devices forming a single wireless network (usually an access point and one or more wireless clients). An SSID (Service Set Identifier) is the name of a BSS. In MBSSID (Multiple BSS) mode, the ZyXEL Device provides multiple virtual APs, each forming its own BSS and using its own individual SSID profile.

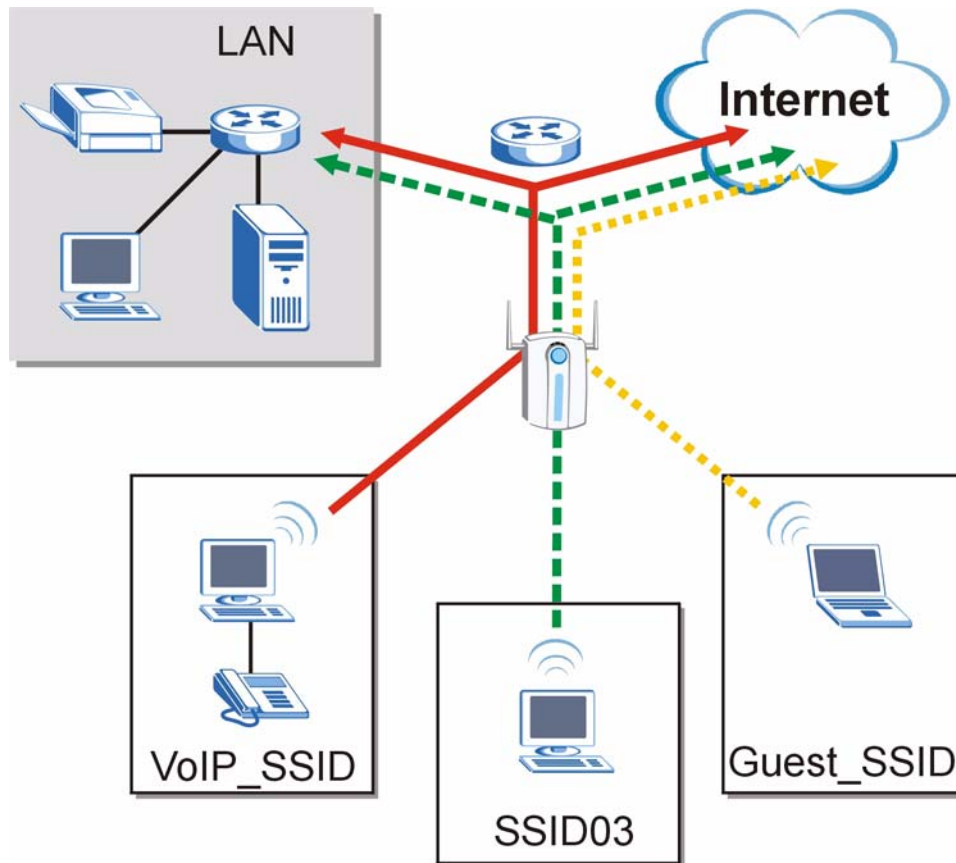
You can configure up to sixteen SSID profiles, and have up to eight active at any one time.

You can assign different wireless and security settings to each SSID profile. This allows you to compartmentalize groups of users, set varying access privileges, and prioritize network traffic to and from certain BSSs.

To the wireless clients in the network, each SSID appears to be a different access point. As in any wireless network, clients can associate only with the SSIDs for which they have the correct security settings.

For example, you might want to set up a wireless network in your office where Internet telephony (Voice over IP, or VoIP) users have priority. You also want a regular wireless network for standard users, as well as a 'guest' wireless network for visitors. In the following figure, **VoIP_SSID** users have Quality of Service (QoS) priority, **SSID03** is the wireless network for standard users, and **Guest_SSID** is the wireless network for guest users. In this example, the guest user is forbidden access to the wired LAN behind the AP and can access only the Internet.

Figure 5 Multiple BSSs



1.2.5 Pre-Configured SSID Profiles

The ZyXEL Device has two pre-configured SSID profiles.

- 1 **VoIP_SSID**. This profile is intended for use by wireless clients requiring the highest QoS (Quality of Service) level for VoIP (Voice over IP) telephony and other applications requiring low latency. The QoS level of this profile is not user-configurable. See [Chapter 8 on page 105](#) for more information on QoS.
- 2 **Guest_SSID**. This profile is intended for use by visitors and others who require access to certain resources on the network (an Internet gateway or a network printer, for example) but must not have access to the rest of the network. Layer 2 isolation is enabled (see [Section 11.1 on page 147](#)), and QoS is set to **NONE**. Intra-BSS traffic blocking is also enabled (see [Section 8.1.1 on page 105](#)). These fields are all user-configurable.

1.3 CAPWAP (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

CAPWAP allows a single access point (the AP controller) to manage up to eight other access points (the managed APs). The managed APs receive all their configuration information from the AP controller. This includes radio configuration (such as the wireless channel to use, permitted data rates, and so on), security profile and SSID profile information. The managed APs' web configurators are disabled, and are managed entirely by the AP controller.

At the time of writing, the NWA-3160 is the only ZyXEL AP model that can be a CAPWAP controller.

At the time of writing, the following ZyXEL AP models can be CAPWAP managed APs:

- NWA-3160
- NWA-3163
- NWA-3500

1.4 Ways to Manage the ZyXEL Device

Use any of the following methods to manage the ZyXEL Device.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the ZyXEL Device using a (supported) web browser.
- Command Line Interface. Line commands are mostly used for troubleshooting by service engineers.
- SMT (NWA-3165 only). System Management Terminal is a text-based configuration menu that you can use to configure your device. Use Telnet to access the SMT.
- FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup and restore.
- SNMP. The device can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See the SNMP chapter in this User's Guide.

1.5 Good Habits for Managing the ZyXEL Device

Do the following things regularly to make the ZyXEL Device more secure and to manage it more effectively.

- Change the password often. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the ZyXEL Device to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you won't have to totally re-configure the ZyXEL Device; you can simply restore your last configuration.

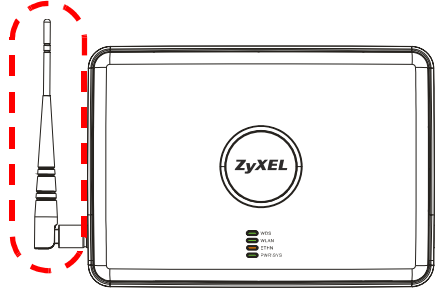
1.6 Hardware Connections

See your Quick Start Guide for information on making hardware connections.

1.6.1 Antennas

The ZyXEL Device has two antennas. When you are looking at the ZyXEL Device from the front, the main antenna is on the left. The main antenna can both transmit and receive. If you have only one antenna, attach it to the connector on the left of the ZyXEL Device.

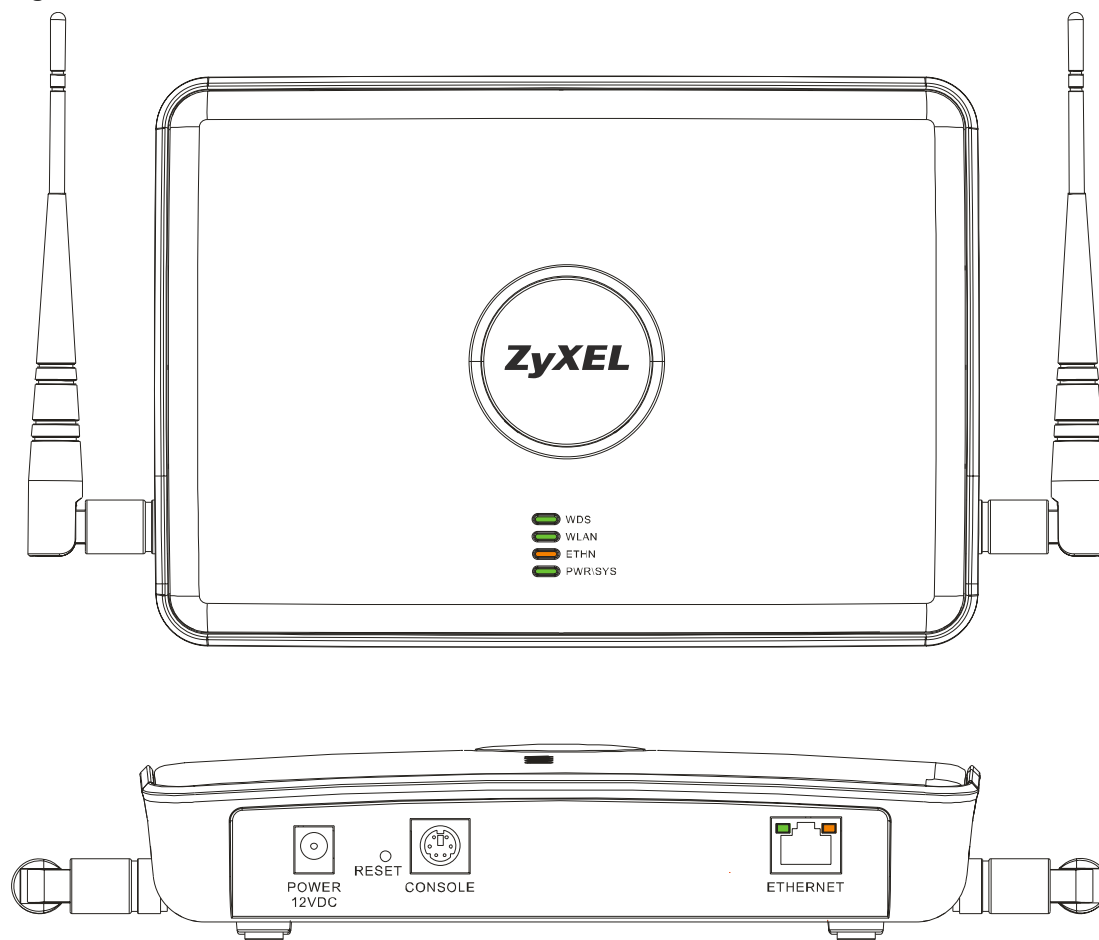
Figure 6 Main Antenna



1.7 LEDs



The figures and screens shown in this User's Guide are from the NWA-3160 (unless otherwise stated). Your device may differ in minor ways.

Figure 7 LEDs**Table 2** LEDs

LABEL	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
WDS (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)		Off	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ZyXEL Device is in Access Point or MBSSID mode and is functioning normally. or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ZyXEL Device is in AP+Bridge or Bridge/Repeater mode and has not established a Wireless Distribution System (WDS) connection.
	Green	On (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)	The ZyXEL Device is in AP+Bridge or Bridge/Repeater mode, and has successfully established a Wireless Distribution System (WDS) connection.
WLAN	Green	On	The wireless LAN is active.
		Blinking	The wireless LAN is active, and transmitting or receiving data.
	Off		The wireless LAN is not active.

Table 2 LEDs (continued)

LABEL	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
ETHERNET	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device has a 10 Mbps Ethernet connection.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device has a 10 Mbps Ethernet connection and is sending or receiving data.
	Yellow	On	The ZyXEL Device has a 100 Mbps Ethernet connection.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device has a 100 Mbps Ethernet connection and is sending/receiving data.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device does not have an Ethernet connection.
POWER/SYS	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power and functioning properly.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device is not receiving power.
	Red	Blinking	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the LED blinks during the boot up process, the system is starting up. or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the LED blinks after the boot up process, the system has failed.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device successfully boots up.

Introducing the Web Configurator

This chapter describes how to access the ZyXEL Device's web configurator and provides an overview of its screens.



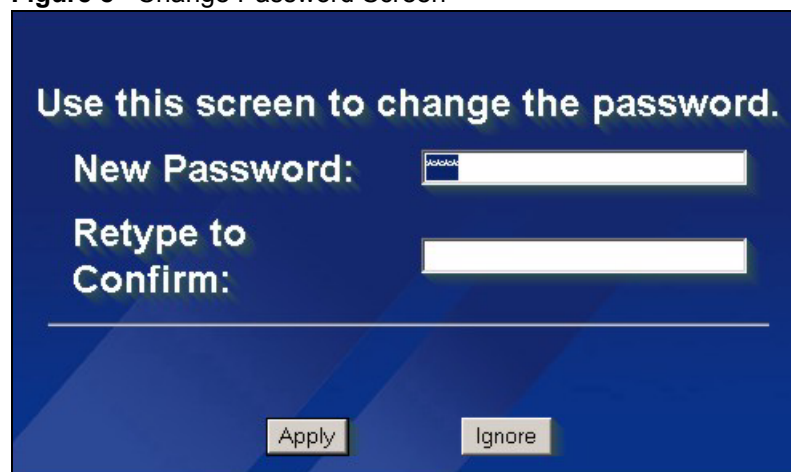
When your ZyXEL Device is in (CAPWAP) Managed AP mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only) the Web Configurator is not available. The ZyXEL Device can be managed only through the controller AP's web configurator.

2.1 Accessing the Web Configurator

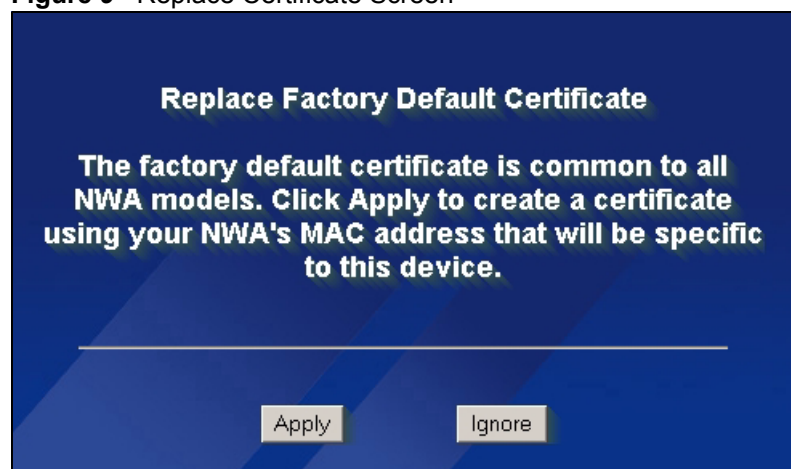
- 1 Make sure your hardware is properly connected and prepare your computer or computer network to connect to the ZyXEL Device (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Launch your web browser.
- 3 Type "192.168.1.2" as the URL (default).
- 4 Type "1234" (default) as the password and click **Login**. In some versions, the default password appears automatically - if this is the case, click **Login**.
- 5 You should see a screen asking you to change your password (highly recommended) as shown next. Type a new password (and retype it to confirm) then click **Apply**. Alternatively, click **Ignore**.



If you do not change the password, the following screen appears every time you login.

Figure 8 Change Password ScreenThe screenshot shows a web interface with a dark blue background. At the top, it says "Use this screen to change the password." Below this, there are two labels: "New Password:" and "Retype to Confirm:". Each label is followed by a white text input field. The "New Password:" field has a small blue icon on its left. At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Ignore".

- 6** Click **Apply** in the **Replace Certificate** screen to create a certificate using your ZyXEL Device's MAC address that will be specific to this device.

Figure 9 Replace Certificate ScreenThe screenshot shows a web interface with a dark blue background. At the top, it says "Replace Factory Default Certificate". Below this, there is a paragraph of text: "The factory default certificate is common to all NWA models. Click Apply to create a certificate using your NWA's MAC address that will be specific to this device." Below the text is a horizontal line. At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: "Apply" and "Ignore".

You should now see the **Status** screen. See [Chapter 2 on page 43](#) for details about the **Status** screen.



The management session automatically times out when the time period set in the **Administrator Inactivity Timer** field expires (default five minutes). Simply log back into the ZyXEL Device if this happens.

2.2 Resetting the ZyXEL Device

If you forget your password or cannot access the web configurator, you will need to use the **RESET** button. This replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all the settings you previously configured. The password will be reset to 1234.

2.2.1 Methods of Restoring Factory-Defaults

You can erase the current configuration and restore factory defaults in three ways:

Use the **RESET** button to upload the default configuration file. Hold this button in for about 10 seconds (the lights will begin to blink). Use this method for cases when the password or IP address of the ZyXEL Device is not known.

Use the web configurator to restore defaults (refer to [Chapter 19 on page 227](#)).

Transfer the configuration file to your ZyXEL Device using FTP. See the section on SMT configuration for more information.

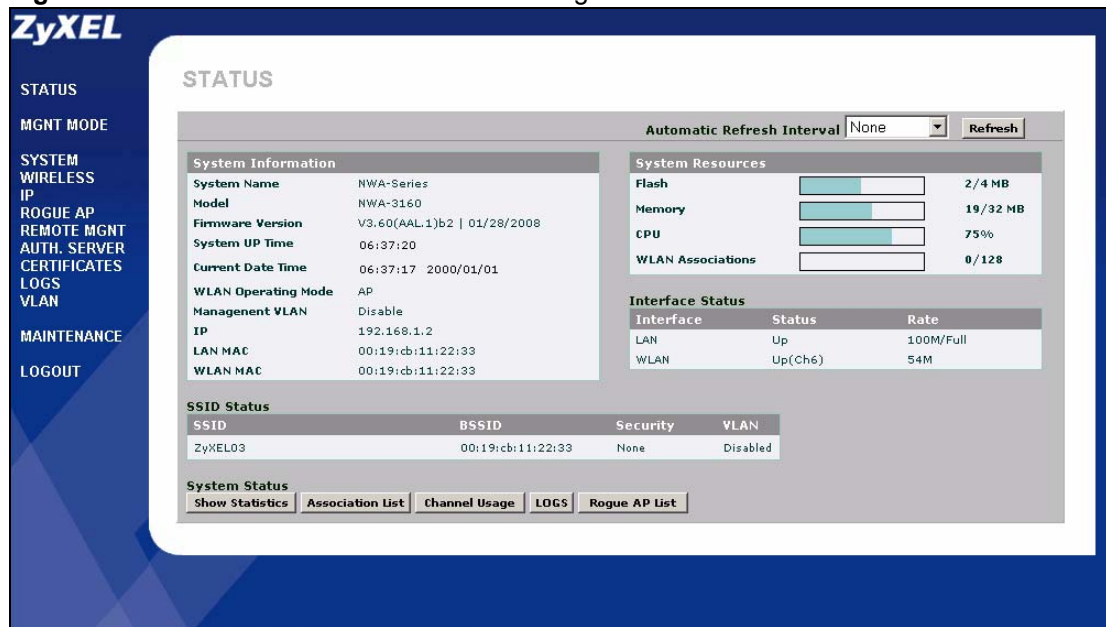
2.3 Navigating the Web Configurator

The following summarizes how to navigate the web configurator from the **Status** screen.

Click **LOGOUT** at any time to exit the web configurator.

Check the status bar at the bottom of the screen when you click **Apply** or **OK** to verify that the configuration has been updated.

Figure 10 The Status Screen of the Web Configurator



Click the links on the left of the screen to configure advanced features such as **MGNT MODE** (NWA-3160 and NWA-3165 only: AP Controller (NWA-3160 only), Standalone AP, Managed AP), **SYSTEM** (General Setup, Password and Time Zone), **WIRELESS** (Wireless, SSID, Security, RADIUS, Layer-2 Isolation, MAC Filter), **IP**, **ROGUE AP** (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only - Configuration, Friendly AP, Rogue AP), **REMOTE MGNT** (Telnet, FTP, WWW and SNMP), **AUTH. SERVER** (Setting, Trusted AP, Trusted Users), **CERTIFICATES** (My Certificates, Trusted CAs), **LOGS** (View Logs and Log Settings) and **VLAN** (Wireless VLAN and RADIUS VLAN).

Click **MAINTENANCE** to view information about your ZyXEL Device or upgrade configuration and firmware files. Maintenance features include **Status** (Statistics), **Association List**, **Channel Usage** (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only), **F/W** (firmware) **Upload**, **Configuration** (Backup, Restore and Default) and **Restart**.

Tutorial

This chapter first provides an overview of how to configure the wireless LAN on your ZyXEL Device, and then gives step-by-step guidelines showing how to configure your ZyXEL Device for some example scenarios.

3.1 How to Configure the Wireless LAN

This section shows how to choose which wireless operating mode you should use on the ZyXEL Device, and the steps you should take to set up the wireless LAN in each wireless mode. See [Section 3.1.3 on page 50](#) for links to more information on each step.



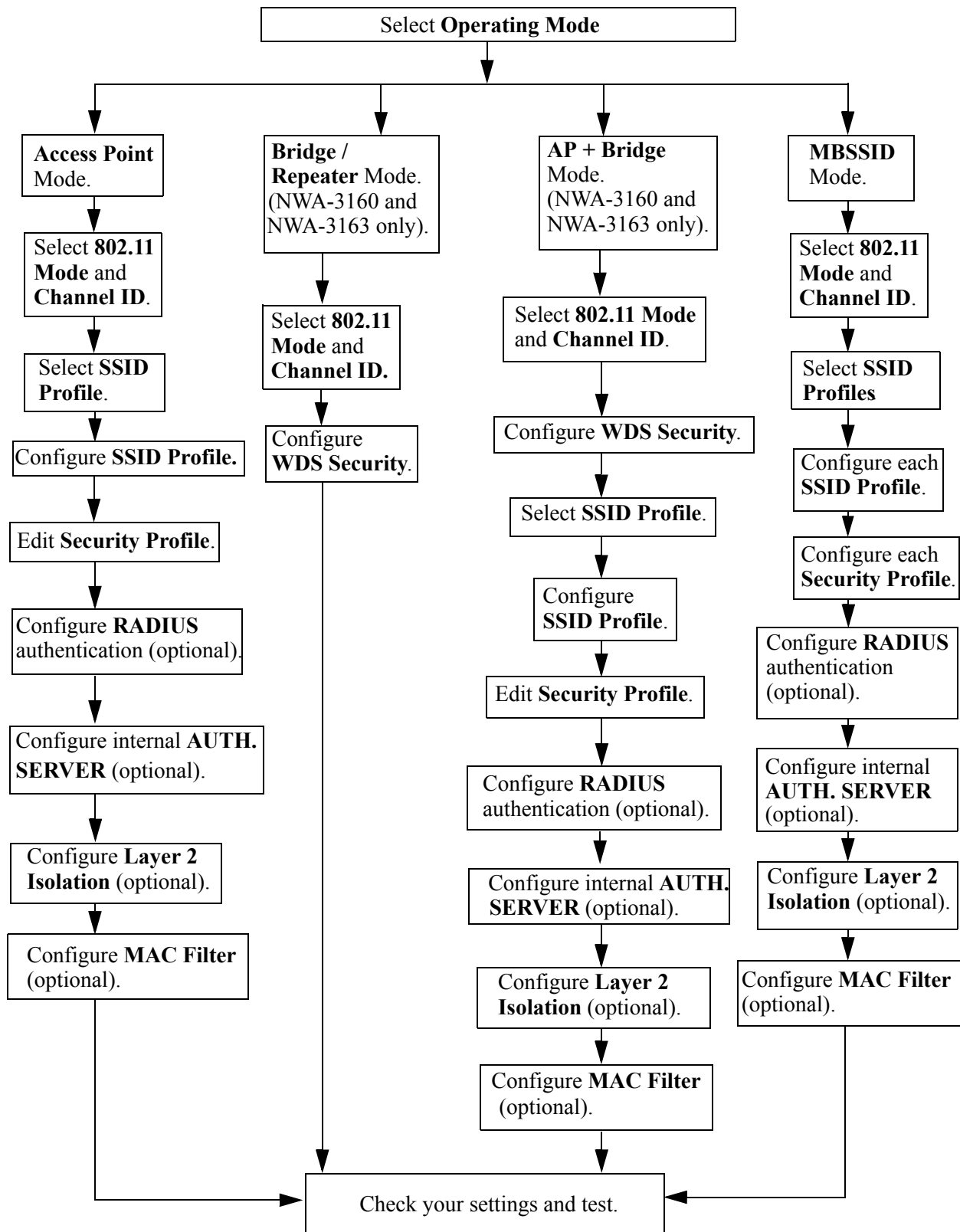
This section describes how to use the ZyXEL Device in standalone mode. For information on using the ZyXEL Device in a CAPWAP network, see [Chapter 5 on page 79](#) and [Chapter 6 on page 83](#).

3.1.1 Choosing the Wireless Mode

- Use **Access Point** operating mode if you want to allow wireless clients to access your wired network, all using the same security and Quality of Service (QoS) settings. See [Section 1.2.1 on page 34](#) for details.
- Use **Bridge/Repeater** operating mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only) if you want to use the ZyXEL Device to communicate with other access points. See [Section 1.2.2 on page 34](#) for details.
The ZyXEL Device is a bridge when other APs access your wired Ethernet network through the ZyXEL Device.
The ZyXEL Device is a repeater when it has no Ethernet connection and allows other APs to communicate with one another through the ZyXEL Device.
- Use **AP+Bridge** operating mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only) if you want to use the ZyXEL Device as an access point (see above) while also communicating with other access points. See [Section 1.2.3 on page 35](#) for details.
- Use **MBSSID** operating mode if you want to use the ZyXEL Device as an access point with some groups of users having different security or QoS settings from other groups of users. See [Section 1.2.4 on page 36](#) for details.

3.1.2 Wireless LAN Configuration Overview

The following figure shows the steps you should take to configure the wireless settings according to the operating mode you select. Use the Web Configurator to set up your ZyXEL Device's wireless network (see your Quick Start Guide for information on setting up your ZyXEL Device and accessing the Web Configurator).

Figure 11 Configuring Wireless LAN

3.1.3 Further Reading

Use these links to find more information on the steps:

- Choosing **802.11 Mode**: see [Section 8.7.1 on page 113](#).
- Choosing a wireless **Channel ID**: see [Section 8.7.1 on page 113](#).
- Selecting and configuring **SSID profile(s)**: see [Section 8.7.1 on page 113](#) and [Section 10.2.1 on page 142](#).
- Configuring and activating **WDS Security** (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only): see [Section 8.7.3 on page 116](#).
- Editing **Security Profile(s)**: see [Section 9.9 on page 128](#).
- Configuring an external **RADIUS** server: see [Section 9.11 on page 136](#).
- Configuring and activating the internal **AUTH. SERVER**: see [Section 9.4.1 on page 125](#) and [Chapter 15 on page 177](#).
- Configuring **Layer 2 Isolation**: see [Section 11.3 on page 149](#).
- Configuring **MAC Filtering**: see [Section 11.4 on page 152](#).

3.2 How to Configure Multiple Wireless Networks

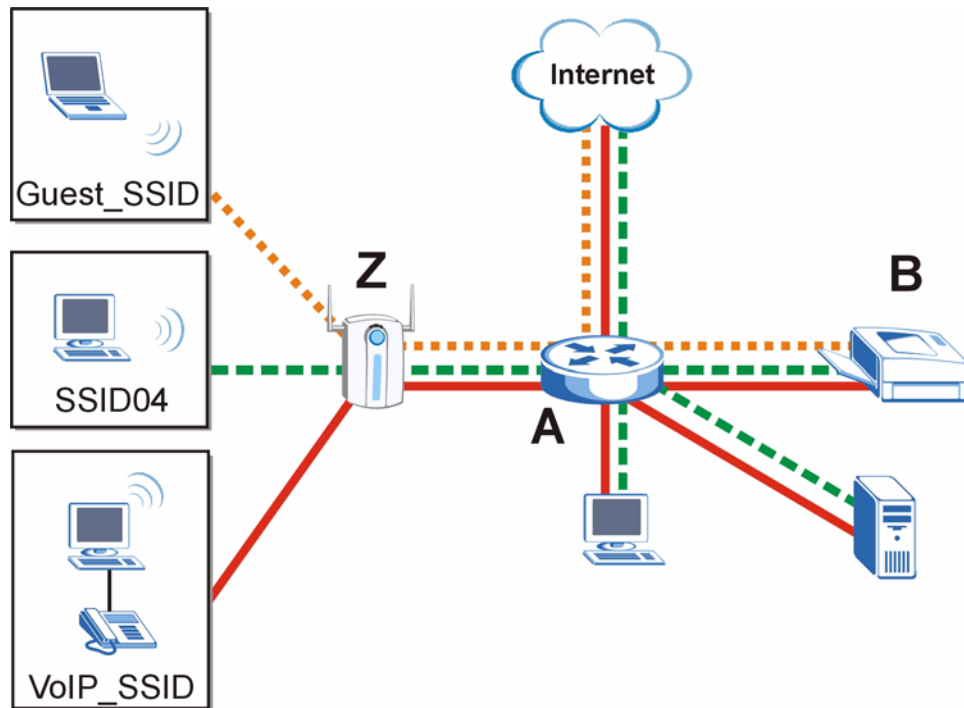
In this example, you have been using your ZyXEL Device as an access point for your office network (See your Quick Start Guide for information on how to set up your ZyXEL Device in Access Point mode). Now your network is expanding and you want to make use of the MBSSID feature (see [Section 10.1 on page 139](#)) to provide multiple wireless networks. Each wireless network will cater for a different type of user.

You want to make three wireless networks: one standard office wireless network with all the same settings you already have, another wireless network with high Quality of Service (QoS) settings for Voice over IP users, and a guest network that allows visitors to your office to access only the Internet and the network printer.

To do this, you will take the following steps:

- 1** Change the operating mode from Access Point to MBSSID and reactivate the standard network.
- 2** Configure a wireless network for Voice over IP users.
- 3** Configure a wireless network for guests to your office.

The following figure shows the multiple networks you want to set up. Your ZyXEL Device is marked **Z**, the main network router is marked **A**, and your network printer is marked **B**.

Figure 12 Tutorial: Example MBSSID Setup

The standard network (**SSID04**) has access to all resources. The VoIP network (**VoIP_SSID**) has access to all resources and a high Quality of Service (QoS) setting (see [Chapter 8 on page 105](#) for information on QoS). The guest network (**Guest_SSID**) has access to the Internet and the network printer only, and a low QoS setting.

To configure these settings, you need to know the MAC (Media Access Control) addresses of the devices you want to allow users of the guest network to access. The following table shows the addresses used in this example.

Table 3 Tutorial: Example Information

Network router (A) MAC address	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA
Network printer (B) MAC address	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00

3.2.1 Change the Operating Mode

Log in to the ZyXEL Device (see [Section 2.1 on page 43](#)). Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The **Wireless** screen appears. In this example, the ZyXEL Device is using **Access Point** operating mode, and is currently set to use the **SSID04** profile.

Figure 13 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Before

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Operating Mode 802.11 Mode <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode Choose Channel ID RTS/CTS Threshold Fragmentation Threshold Output Power SSID Profile		Access Point 802.11b+g Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan 2346 (256 ~ 2346) 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number) 100% SSID04			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Roaming					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

Select **MBSSID** from the **Operating Mode** drop-down list box. The screen displays as follows.

Figure 14 Tutorial: Wireless LAN: Change Mode

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																														
Operating Mode 802.11 Mode <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode Choose Channel ID RTS/CTS Threshold Fragmentation Threshold Output Power Select SSID Profile		MBSSID 802.11b+g Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan 2346 (256 ~ 2346) 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number) 100%																																	
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Index</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Profile</th> <th>Index</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>VoIP_SSID</td> <td>5</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Guest2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Guest_SSID</td> <td>6</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Guest2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID04</td> <td>7</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Guest2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>SSID05</td> <td>8</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Guest2</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>						Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2	3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID05	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2
Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile																														
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2																														
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2																														
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2																														
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID05	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2																														
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Roaming																																			
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>																																			

This **Select SSID Profile** table allows you to activate or deactivate SSID profiles. Your wireless network was previously using the **SSID04** profile, so select **SSID04** in one of the **Profile** list boxes (number **3** in this example).

Select the **Index** box for the entry and click **Apply** to activate the profile. Your standard wireless network (**SSID04**) is now accessible to your wireless clients as before. You do not need to configure anything else for your standard network.

3.2.2 Configure the VoIP Network

Next, click **WIRELESS > SSID**. The following screen displays. Note that the **SSID04** SSID profile (the standard network) is using the **security01** security profile. You cannot change this security profile without changing the standard network's parameters, so when you set up security for the **VoIP_SSID** and **Guest_SSID** profiles you will need to set different security profiles.

Figure 15 Tutorial: WIRELESS > SSID

Wireless

SSID

Security

RADIUS

Layer-2 Isolation

MAC Filter

	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	l2isolation01	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security08	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable

Edit

The Voice over IP (VoIP) network will use the pre-configured SSID profile, so select **VoIP_SSID**'s radio button and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

Figure 16 Tutorial: VoIP SSID Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name :		VoIP_SSID			
SSID :		VoIP_SSID_Example			
Hide Name(SSID) :		Enable			
Security :		security02			
RADIUS :		radius01			
QoS :		VoIP			
L2 Isolation :		Disable			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :		Disable			
MAC Filtering :		Disable			
		Apply		Reset	

- Choose a new SSID for the VoIP network. In this example, enter **VOIP_SSID_Example**. Note that although the SSID changes, the SSID profile name (**VoIP_SSID**) remains the same as before.
- Select **Enable** from the **Hide Name (SSID)** list box. You want only authorized company employees to use this network, so there is no need to broadcast the SSID to wireless clients scanning the area.
- The standard network (SSID04) is currently using the **security01** profile, so use a different profile for the VoIP network. If you used the **security01** profile, anyone who could access the standard network could access the VoIP wireless network. Select **security02** from the **Security** field.
- Leave all the other fields at their defaults and click **Apply**.

3.2.2.1 Set Up Security for the VoIP Profile

Now you need to configure the security settings to use on the VoIP wireless network. Click the **Security** tab.

Figure 17 Tutorial: VoIP Security

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<input type="radio"/>		Index	Profile Name	Security Mode	
<input type="radio"/>		1	security01	WPA2-PSK	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>		2	security02	None	
<input type="radio"/>		3	security03	None	
<input type="radio"/>		4	security04	None	
<input type="radio"/>		5	security05	None	
<input type="radio"/>		6	security06	None	
<input type="radio"/>		7	security07	None	
<input type="radio"/>		8	security08	None	
<input type="radio"/>		9	security09	None	
<input type="radio"/>		10	security10	None	
<input type="radio"/>		11	security11	None	
<input type="radio"/>		12	security12	None	
<input type="radio"/>		13	security13	None	
<input type="radio"/>		14	security14	None	
<input type="radio"/>		15	security15	None	
<input type="radio"/>		16	security16	None	

You already chose to use the **security02** profile for this network, so select the radio button for **security02** and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

Figure 18 Tutorial: VoIP Security Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : VoIP_Security</p> <p>Security Mode : WPA2-PSK</p> <p>Pre-Shared Key : ThisismyWPA2-PSKpre-sharedkey</p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : 1800 (in seconds)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : 3600 (in seconds)</p> <p>Group Key Update Timer : 1800 (in seconds)</p>					

- Change the **Name** field to “VoIP_Security” to make it easier to remember and identify.
- In this example, you do not have a RADIUS server for authentication, so select **WPA2-PSK** in the **Security Mode** field. WPA2-PSK provides strong security that anyone with a compatible wireless client can use, once they know the pre-shared key (PSK). Enter the PSK you want to use in your network in the **Pre Shared Key** field. In this example, the PSK is “ThisismyWPA2-PSKpre-sharedkey”.

- Click **Apply**. The **WIRELESS > Security** screen displays. Ensure that the **Profile Name** for entry 2 displays “**VoIP_Security**” and that the **Security Mode** is **WPA2-PSK**.

Figure 19 Tutorial: VoIP Security: Updated

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																				
<table><tr><th></th><th>Index</th><th>Profile Name</th><th>Security Mode</th></tr><tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>security01</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>VoIP_Security</td><td>WPA2-PSK</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>security03</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>security04</td><td>None</td></tr></table>							Index	Profile Name	Security Mode		1	security01	None		2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK		3	security03	None		4	security04	None
	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode																						
	1	security01	None																						
	2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK																						
	3	security03	None																						
	4	security04	None																						

3.2.2.2 Activate the VoIP Profile

You need to activate the **VoIP_SSID** profile before it can be used. Click the **Wireless** tab. In the **Select SSID Profile** table, select the **VoIP_SSID** profile and click **Apply**.

Figure 20 Tutorial: Activate VoIP Profile

Select SSID Profile			
Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03

Your VoIP wireless network is now ready to use. Any traffic using the **VoIP_SSID** profile will be given the highest priority across the wireless network.

3.2.3 Configure the Guest Network

When you are setting up the wireless network for guests to your office, your primary concern is to keep your network secure while allowing access to certain resources (such as a network printer, or the Internet). For this reason, the pre-configured **Guest_SSID** profile has layer-2 isolation and intra-BSS traffic blocking enabled by default. “Layer-2 isolation” means that a client accessing the network via the **Guest_SSID** profile can access only certain pre-defined devices on the network (see [Section 11.1 on page 147](#)), and “intra-BSS traffic blocking” means that the client cannot access other clients on the same wireless network (see [Section 8.1.1 on page 105](#)).

Click **WIRELESS > SSID**. Select **Guest_SSID**’s entry in the list and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.

Figure 21 Tutorial: Guest Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name : Guest_SSID SSID : Guest_SSID_Example Hide Name(SSID) : Disable Security : security03 RADIUS : radius01 QoS : NONE L2 Isolation : l2isolation01 Intra-BSS Traffic blocking : Enable MAC Filtering : Disable					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

- Choose a new SSID for the guest network. In this example, enter **Guest_SSID_Example**. Note that although the SSID changes, the SSID profile name (**Guest_SSID**) remains the same as before.
- Select **Disable** from the **Hide Name (SSID)** list box. This makes it easier for guests to configure their own computers' wireless clients to your network's settings.
- The standard network (SSID04) is already using the **security01** profile, and the VoIP network is using the **security02** profile (renamed **VoIP_Security**) so select the **security03** profile from the **Security** field.
- Leave all the other fields at their defaults and click **Apply**.

3.2.3.1 Set Up Security for the Guest Profile

Now you need to configure the security settings to use on the guest wireless network. Click the **Security** tab.

You already chose to use the **security03** profile for this network, so select **security03**'s entry in the list and click **Edit**. The following screen appears.













Figure 22 Tutorial: Guest Security Profile Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Name : Guest_Security Security Mode : WPA-PSK Pre-Shared Key : ThisismyGuestWPApre-shared-key ReAuthentication Timer : 1800 (in seconds) Idle Timeout : 3600 (in seconds) Group Key Update Timer : 1800 (in seconds)					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

- Change the **Name** field to "Guest_Security" to make it easier to remember and identify.

- Select **WPA-PSK** in the **Security Mode** field. WPA-PSK provides strong security that is supported by most wireless clients. Even though your Guest_SSID clients do not have access to sensitive information on the network, you should not leave the network without security. An attacker could still cause damage to the network or intercept unsecured communications.
- Enter the PSK you want to use in your network in the **Pre Shared Key** field. In this example, the PSK is “ThisismyGuestWPApre-sharedkey”.
- Click **Apply**. The **WIRELESS > Security** screen displays. Ensure that the **Profile Name** for entry 3 displays “**Guest_Security**” and that the **Security Mode** is **WPA-PSK**.

Figure 23 Tutorial: Guest Security: Updated

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																				
<table><thead><tr><th></th><th>Index</th><th>Profile Name</th><th>Security Mode</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>security01</td><td>WPA2-PSK</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>VoIP_Security</td><td>WPA2-PSK</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>Guest_Security</td><td>WPA-PSK</td></tr><tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>security04</td><td>None</td></tr></tbody></table>							Index	Profile Name	Security Mode		1	security01	WPA2-PSK		2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK		3	Guest_Security	WPA-PSK		4	security04	None
	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode																						
	1	security01	WPA2-PSK																						
	2	VoIP_Security	WPA2-PSK																						
	3	Guest_Security	WPA-PSK																						
	4	security04	None																						

















3.2.3.2 Set up Layer 2 Isolation

Configure layer 2 isolation to control the specific devices you want the users on your guest network to access. Click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation**. The following screen appears.

Figure 24 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation

Figure 2-1: Patchwork Layer-2 Isolation

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
----------	------	----------	--------	-------------------	------------

	Index	Profile Name
	1	l2isolation01
	2	l2isolation02
	3	l2isolation03
	4	l2isolation04
	5	l2isolation05
	6	l2isolation06
	7	l2isolation07
	8	l2isolation08
	9	l2isolation09
	10	l2isolation10
	11	l2isolation11
	12	l2isolation12
	13	l2isolation13
	14	l2isolation14
	15	l2isolation15
	16	l2isolation16

Edit

The Guest_SSID network uses the **l2isolation01** profile by default, so select its entry and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

Figure 25 Tutorial: Layer 2 Isolation Profile

Layer-2 Isolation Configuration

Profile Name: l2isolation01

Allow devices with these MAC addresses

Set	MAC Address	Set	MAC Address
1	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA	17	00:00:00:00:00:00
2	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00	18	00:00:00:00:00:00
3	00:00:00:00:00:00	19	00:00:00:00:00:00
15	00:00:00:00:00:00	31	00:00:00:00:00:00
16	00:00:00:00:00:00	32	00:00:00:00:00:00

Apply Reset

Enter the MAC addresses of the two network devices you want users on the guest network to be able to access: the main network router (00:AA:00:AA:00:AA) and the network printer (AA:00:AA:00:AA:00). Click **Apply**.

3.2.3.3 Activate the Guest Profile

You need to activate the **Guest_SSID** profile before it can be used. Click the **Wireless** tab. In the **Select SSID Profile** table, select the check box for the **Guest_SSID** profile and click **Apply**.

Figure 26 Tutorial: Activate Guest Profile

Output Power: 100%

Select SSID Profile

Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SSID03

Your Guest wireless network is now ready to use.

3.2.4 Testing the Wireless Networks

To make sure that the three networks are correctly configured, do the following.

- On a computer with a wireless client, scan for access points. You should see the **Guest_SSID** network, but not the **VoIP_SSID** network. If you can see the VoIP_SSID network, go to its SSID Edit screen and make sure **Hide Name (SSID)** is set to **Enable**. Whether or not you see the standard network's SSID (**SSID04**) depends on whether "hide SSID" is enabled.

- Try to access each network using the correct security settings, and then using incorrect security settings, such as the WPA-PSK for another active network. If the behavior is different from expected (for example, if you can access the VoIP wireless network using the security settings for the Guest_SSID wireless network) check that the SSID profile is set to use the correct security profile, and that the settings of the security profile are correct.
- Access the Guest_SSID network and try to access other resources than those specified in the Layer 2 Isolation (**l2isolation01**) profile screen.

You can use the ping utility to do this. Click **Start > Run...** and enter “cmd” in the **Open:** field. Click **OK**. At the **c:\>** prompt, enter “ping 192.168.1.10” (substitute the IP address of a real device on your network that is not on the layer 2 isolation list). If you receive a reply, check the settings in the **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation > Edit** screen, and ensure that the correct layer 2 isolation profile is enabled in the Guest_SSID profile screen.

3.3 How to Set Up and Use Rogue AP Detection

This example shows you how to configure the rogue AP detection feature on the ZyXEL Device.



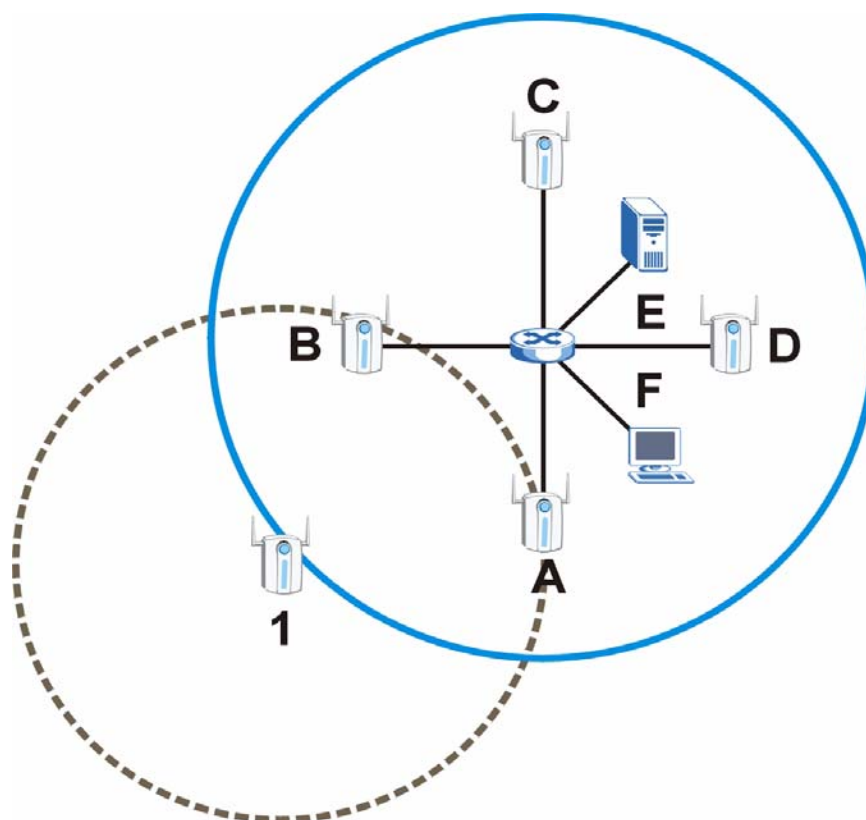
This feature is available on the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only.

A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network’s coverage area that is not a sanctioned part of that network. The example also shows how to set the ZyXEL Device to send out e-mail alerts whenever it detects a rogue wireless access point. See [Chapter 13 on page 159](#) for background information on the rogue AP function and security considerations.

In this example, you want to ensure that your company’s data is not accessible to an attacker gaining entry to your wireless network through a rogue AP.

Your wireless network operates in an office building. It consists of four access points (all ZyXEL Devices) and a variable number of wireless clients. You also know that the coffee shop on the ground floor has a wireless network consisting of a single access point, which can be detected and accessed from your floor of the building. There are no other static wireless networks in your coverage area.

The following diagram shows the wireless networks in your area. Your access points are marked **A**, **B**, **C** and **D**. You also have a network mail/file server, marked **E**, and a computer, marked **F**, connected to the wired network. The coffee shop’s access point is marked **1**.

Figure 27 Tutorial: Wireless Network Example

In the figure, the solid circle represents the range of your wireless network, and the dashed circle represents the extent of the coffee shop's wireless network. Note that the two networks overlap. This means that one or more of your APs can detect the AP (1) in the other wireless network.

When configuring the rogue AP feature on your ZyXEL Devices in this example, you will need to use the information in the following table. You need the IP addresses of your APs to access their Web configurators, and you need the MAC address of each AP to configure the friendly AP list. You need the IP address of the mail server to set up e-mail alerts.

Table 4 Tutorial: Rogue AP Example Information

DEVICE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS
Access Point A	192.168.1.1	00:AA:00:AA:00:AA
Access Point B	192.168.1.2	AA:00:AA:00:AA:00
Access Point C	192.168.1.3	A0:0A:A0:0A:A0:0A
Access Point D	192.168.1.4	0A:A0:0A:A0:0A:A0
File / Mail Server E	192.168.1.25	N/A
Access Point 1	UNKNOWN	AF:AF:AF:FA:FA:FA



The ZyXEL Device can detect the MAC addresses of APs automatically. However, it is more secure to obtain the correct MAC addresses from another source and add them to the friendly AP list manually. For example, an attacker's AP mimicking the correct SSID could be placed on the friendly AP list by accident, if selected from the list of auto-detected APs. In this example you have spoken to the coffee shop's owner, who has told you the correct MAC address of his AP.

In this example, you will do the following things.

- 1 Set up and save a friendly AP list.
- 2 Activate periodic Rogue AP Detection.
- 3 Set up e-mail alerts.
- 4 Configure your other access points.
- 5 Test the setup.

3.3.1 Set Up and Save a Friendly AP list

Take the following steps to set up and save a list of access points you want to allow in your network's coverage area.

- 1 On a computer connected to the wired network (F in the previous figure), open your Internet browser and enter the URL of access point A (192.168.1.1). Login to the Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP**. The following screen displays.

Figure 28 Tutorial: Friendly AP (Before Data Entry)

- 2 Fill in the **MAC Address** and **Description** fields as in the following table. Click **Add** after you enter the details of each AP to include it in the list.

Table 5 Tutorial: Friendly AP Information

MAC ADDRESS	DESCRIPTION
00:AA:00:AA:00:AA	My Access Point _A_
AA:00:AA:00:AA:00	My Access Point _B_
A0:0A:A0:0A:A0:0A	My Access Point _C_
0A:A0:0A:A0:0A:A0	My Access Point _D_
AF:AF:AF:FA:FA:FA	Coffee Shop Access Point _1_



You can add APs that are not part of your network to the friendly AP list, as long as you know that they do not pose a threat to your network's security.

The Friendly AP screen now appears as follows.

Figure 29 Tutorial: Friendly AP (After Data Entry)

#	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description	
1	00:aa:00:aa:00:aa	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _A_	
2	aa:00:aa:00:aa:00	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _B_	
3	a0:0a:a0:0a:a0:0a	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _C_	
4	0a:a0:0a:a0:0a:a0	N/A	N/A	N/A	My Access Point _D_	
5	af:af:af:fa:fa:fa	N/A	N/A	N/A	Coffee Shop Access Point _1_	

- Next, you will save the list of friendly APs in order to provide a backup and upload it to your other access points.

Click the **Configuration** tab. The following screen appears.

Figure 30 Tutorial: Configuration

Configuration

Active Rogue AP Period Detection: Yes

Period: 10 (min.)

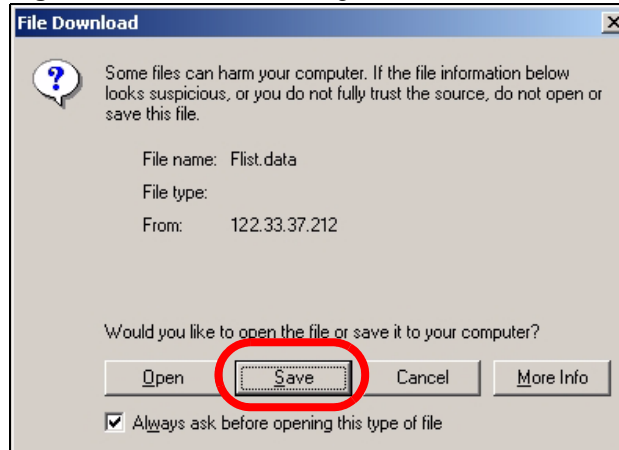
Friendly AP List

Export

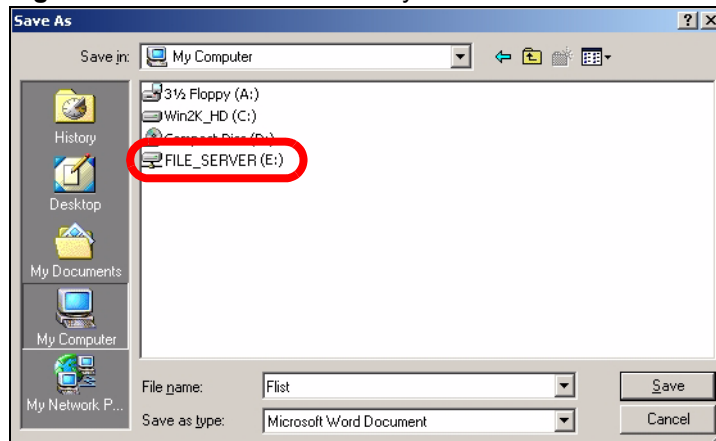
File Path: Browse... Import

Apply Reset

- Click **Export**. If a window similar to the following appears, click **Save**.

Figure 31 Tutorial: Warning

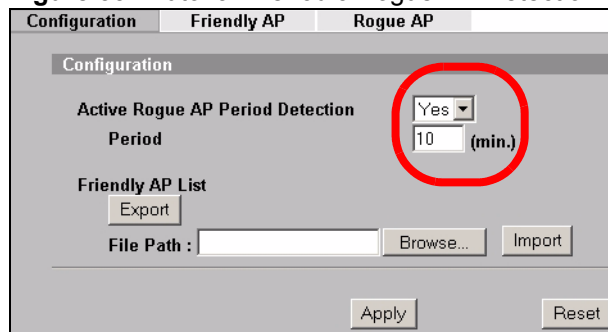
- 5 Save the friendly AP list somewhere it can be accessed by all the other access points on the network. In this example, save it on the network file server (E in Figure 27 on page 61). The default filename is “Flist”.

Figure 32 Tutorial: Save Friendly AP list

3.3.2 Activate Periodic Rogue AP Detection

Take the following steps to activate rogue AP detection on the first of your ZyXEL Devices.

- 1 In the **ROGUE AP > Configuration** screen, select **Yes** from the **Activate Rogue AP Period Detection** field.

Figure 33 Tutorial: Periodic Rogue AP Detection

- 2 In the **Period (min.)** field, enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to scan for rogue APs. You can have the ZyXEL Device scan anywhere from once every ten minutes to once every hour. In this example, enter “10”.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

3.3.3 Set Up E-mail Logs

In this section, you will configure the first of your four APs to send a log message to your e-mail inbox whenever a rogue AP is discovered in your wireless network’s coverage area.

- 1 Click **LOGS > Log Settings**. The following screen appears.

Figure 34 Tutorial: Log Settings

Address Info:

Mail Server: 192.168.1.25 (Outgoing SMTP Server NAME or IP Address)

Mail Subject: ALERT_Access_Point_A

Send log to: (E-Mail Address)

Send alerts to: myname@myfirm.com (E-Mail Address)

☐ SMTP Authentication

User NAME:

Password:

Syslog Logging:

☐ Active

Syslog IP Address: 0.0.0.0 (Server NAME or IP Address)

Log Facility: Local 1

Send Log:

Log Schedule: None

Day for Sending Log: Sunday

Time for Sending Log: 0 (hour) 0 (minute)

☐ Clear log after sending mail

Log

☐ System Maintenance

☐ System Errors

☐ PKI

☐ SSL/TLS

☐ 802.1x

☐ Wireless

☐ Internal RADIUS Server

☐ Rogue AP Detection

Send immediate alert

☒ System Errors

☐ PKI

☒ Rogue AP Detection

Apply **Reset**

- In this example, your mail server’s IP address is **192.168.1.25**. Enter this IP address in the **Mail Server** field.
- Enter a subject line for the alert e-mails in the **Mail Subject** field. Choose a subject that is eye-catching and identifies the access point - in this example, “ALERT_Access_Point_A”.

- Enter the email address to which you want alerts to be sent (**myname@myfirm.com**, in this example).
- In the **Send Immediate Alert** section, select the events you want to trigger immediate e-mails. Ensure that **Rogue AP** is selected.
- Click **Apply**.

3.3.4 Configure Your Other Access Points

Access point **A** is now configured to do the following.

- Scan for access points in its coverage area every ten minutes.
- Recognize friendly access points from a list.
- Send immediate alerts to your email account if it detects an access point not on the list.

Now you need to configure the other wireless access points on your network to do the same things.

For each access point, take the following steps.

- 1 From a computer on the wired network, enter the access point's IP address and login to its Web configurator. See [Table 4 on page 61](#) for the example IP addresses.
- 2 Import the friendly AP list. Click **ROGUE AP > Configuration > Browse...** Find the "Flist" file where you previously saved it on the network and click **Open**.
- 3 Click **Import**. Check the **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP** screen to ensure that the friendly AP list has been correctly uploaded.
- 4 Activate periodic rogue AP detection. See [Section 3.3.2 on page 64](#).
- 5 Set up e-mail logs as in [Section 3.3.3 on page 65](#), but change the **Mail Subject** field so you can tell which AP the alerts come from ("ALERT_Access_Point_B", etc.)

3.3.5 Test the Setup

Next, test your setup to ensure it is correctly configured.

- Log into each AP's Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP**. Click **Refresh**. If any of the MAC addresses from [Table 5 on page 62](#) appear in the list, the friendly AP function may be incorrectly configured - check the **ROGUE AP > Friendly AP** screen. If any entries appear in the rogue AP list that are not in [Table 5 on page 62](#), write down the AP's MAC address for future reference and check your e-mail inbox. If you have received a rogue AP alert, email alerts are correctly configured on that ZyXEL Device.
- If you have another access point that is not used in your network, make a note of its MAC address and set it up next to each of your ZyXEL Devices in turn while the network is running.

Either wait for at least ten minutes (to ensure the ZyXEL Device performs a scan in that time) or login to the ZyXEL Device's Web configurator and click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP > Refresh** to have the ZyXEL Device perform a scan immediately.

- Check the **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP** screen. You should see an entry in the list with the same MAC address as your "rogue" AP.
- Check the **LOGS > View Logs** screen. You should see a **Rogue AP Detection** entry in red text, including the MAC address of your "rogue" AP.

- Check your e-mail. You should have received at least one e-mail alert (your other ZyXEL Devices may also have sent alerts, depending on their proximity and the output power of your “rogue” AP).

3.4 Using Multiple MAC Filters and L-2 Isolation Profiles

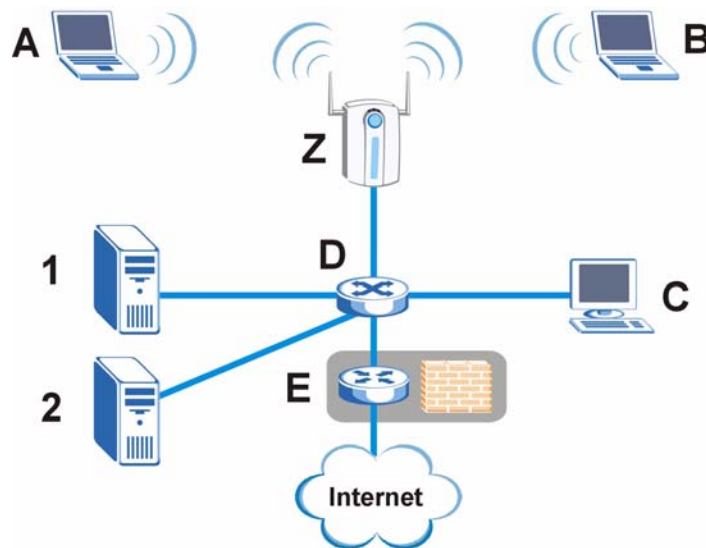
This example shows you how to allow certain users to access only specific parts of your network. You can do this by using multiple MAC filters and layer-2 isolation profiles.

3.4.1 Scenario

In this example, you run a company network in which certain employees must wirelessly access secure file servers containing valuable proprietary data.

You have two secure servers (**1** and **2** in the following figure). Wireless user “Alice” (**A**) needs to access server **1** (but should not access server **2**) and wireless user “Bob” (**B**) needs to access server **2** (but should not access server **1**). Your ZyXEL Device is marked **Z**. **C** is a workstation on your wired network, **D** is your main network switch, and **E** is the security gateway you use to connect to the Internet.

Figure 35 Tutorial: Example Network



3.4.2 Your Requirements

- 1 You want to set up a wireless network to allow only Alice to access Server 1 and the Internet.
- 2 You want to set up a second wireless network to allow only Bob to access Server 2 and the Internet.

3.4.3 Setup

In this example, you have already set up the ZyXEL Device in MBSSID mode (see [Chapter 10 on page 139](#)). It uses two SSID profiles simultaneously. You have configured each SSID profile as shown in the following table.

Table 6 Tutorial: SSID Profile Security Settings

SSID Profile Name	SERVER_1	SERVER_2
SSID	SSID_S1	SSID_S2
Security	Security Profile security03 : WPA2-PSK Hide SSID	Security Profile security04 : WPA2-PSK Hide SSID
Intra-BSS traffic blocking	Enabled	Enabled

Each SSID profile already uses a different pre-shared key.

In this example, you will configure access limitations for each SSID profile. To do this, you will take the following steps.

- 1 Configure the SERVER_1 network's SSID profile to use specific MAC filter and layer-2 isolation profiles.
- 2 Configure the SERVER_1 network's MAC filter profile.
- 3 Configure the SERVER_1 network's layer-2 isolation profile.
- 4 Repeat steps 1 ~ 3 for the SERVER_2 network.
- 5 Check your settings and test the configuration.

To configure layer-2 isolation, you need to know the MAC addresses of the devices on your network, which are as follows.

Table 7 Tutorial: Example Network MAC Addresses

DEVICE	LABEL	MAC ADDRESS
ZyXEL Device	Z	BB:AA:99:88:77:66
Secure Server 1	1	AA:99:88:77:66:55
Secure Server 2	2	99:88:77:66:55:44
Workstation	C	88:77:66:55:44:33
Switch	D	77:66:55:44:33:22
Security gateway	E	66:55:44:33:22:11

To configure MAC filtering, you need to know the MAC addresses of the devices Alice and Bob use to connect to the network, which are as follows.

Table 8 Tutorial: Example User MAC Addresses

USER	MAC ADDRESS
Alice	11:22:33:44:55:66
Bob	22:33:44:55:66:77

3.4.4 Configure the SERVER_1 Network

First, you will set up the SERVER_1 network which allows Alice to access secure server 1 via the network switch.

You will configure the MAC filter to restrict access to Alice alone, and then configure layer-2 isolation to allow her to access only the network router, the file server and the Internet security gateway.

Take the following steps to configure the SERVER_1 network.

- 1 Log into the ZyXEL Device's Web Configurator and click **WIRELESS > SSID**. The following screen displays, showing the SSID profiles you already configured.

Figure 36 Tutorial: SSID Profile

Wireless

SSID

Security

RADIUS

Layer-2 Isolation

MAC Filter

SERVER_1

	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	l2isolation01	Disable
	3	SERVER_1	SSID03	security03	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	4	SERVER_2	SSID04	security04	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security03	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable

Edit

- 2 Select **SERVER_1**'s entry and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

Figure 37 Tutorial: SSID Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name :		SERVER_1			
SSID :		SSID03			
Hide Name(SSID) :		Enable			
Security :		security03			
RADIUS :		radius01			
QoS :		NONE			
L2 Isolation :		l2isolation03			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking :		Enable			
MAC Filtering :		macfilter03			
		<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>			

Select **l2isolation03** in the **L2 Isolation** field, and select **macfilter03** in the **MAC Filtering** field. Click **Apply**.

- Click the **Layer-2 Isolation** tab. When the **Layer-2 Isolation** screen appears, select **l2isolation03**'s entry and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

Figure 38 Tutorial: Layer-2 Isolation Edit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Profile Name		L-2-ISO_SERVER_1			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	77:66:55:44:33:22	NET_ROUTER	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	AA:99:88:77:66:55	SERVER_1	18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	66:55:44:33:22:11	GATEWAY	19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	

Enter the network router's **MAC Address** and add a **Description** ("NET_ROUTER" in this case) in **Set 1**'s entry.

Enter server 1's **MAC Address** and add a **Description** ("SERVER_1" in this case) in **Set 2**'s entry.

Change the **Profile Name** to "L-2-ISO_SERVER_1" and click **Apply**. You have restricted users on the SERVER_1 network to access only the devices with the MAC addresses you entered.

- Click the **MAC Filter** tab. When the **MAC Filter** screen appears, select **macfilter03**'s entry and click **Edit**.

Enter the MAC address of the device Alice uses to connect to the network in **Set 1**'s **MAC Address** field and enter her name in the **Description** field, as shown in the following figure. Change the **Profile Name** to "MacFilter_SERVER_1". Select **Allow Association** from the **Filter Action** field and click **Apply**.

Figure 39 Tutorial: MAC Filter Edit (SERVER_1)

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
MAC Address Filter					
Profile Name		MacFilter_SERVER_1			
Filter Action		Allow Association ▼			
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	11:22:33:44:55:66	Alice	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	

You have restricted access to the SERVER_1 network to only the networking device whose MAC address you entered. The SERVER_1 network is now configured.

3.4.5 Configure the SERVER_2 Network

Next, you will configure the SERVER_2 network that allows Bob to access secure server 2 and the Internet.

To do this, repeat the procedure in [Section 3.4.4 on page 68](#), substituting the following information.

Table 9 Tutorial: SERVER_2 Network Information

SSID Screen	
Index	4
Profile Name	SERVER_2
SSID Edit (SERVER_2) Screen	
L2 Isolation	L2Isolation04
MAC Filtering	macfilter04
Layer-2 Isolation (L2Isolation04) Screen	
Profile Name	L-2-ISO_SERVER-2
Set 1	MAC Address: 77:66:55:44:33:22 Description: NET_ROUTER
Set 2	MAC Address: 99:88:77:66:55:44 Description: SERVER_2
Set 3	MAC Address: 66:55:44:33:22:11 Description: GATEWAY
MAC Filter (macfilter04) Edit Screen	
Profile Name	MacFilter_SERVER_2
Set 1	MAC Address: 22:33:44:55:66:77 Description: Bob

3.4.6 Checking your Settings and Testing the Configuration

Use the following sections to ensure that your wireless networks are set up correctly.

3.4.6.1 Checking Settings

Take the following steps to check that the ZyXEL Device is using the correct SSIDs, MAC filters and layer-2 isolation profiles.

- 1 Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. Check that the **Operating Mode** is **MBSSID** and that the correct SSID profiles are selected and activated, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 40 Tutorial: SSID Profiles Activated

Output Power: 100%

Select SSID Profile

Index	Profile	Index	Profile
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1
4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_2	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	SERVER_1

☒ Enable

- 2 Next, click the **SSID** tab. Check that each configured SSID profile uses the correct **Security**, **Layer-2 Isolation** and **MAC Filter** profiles, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 41 Tutorial: SSID Tab Correct Settings

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter			
	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	l2isolation01	Disable
	3	SERVER_1	SSID_S1	security03	radius01	NONE	L-2-ISO_SERVER_1	MacFilter_SERVER_1
	4	SERVER_2	SSID_S2	security04	radius01	NONE	L-2-ISO_SERVER_2	MacFilter_SERVER_2
	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable



If the settings are not as shown, follow the steps in the relevant section of this tutorial again.

3.4.6.2 Testing the Configuration

Before you allow employees to use the network, you need to thoroughly test whether the setup behaves as it should. Take the following steps to do this.

- 1 Test the SERVER_1 network.

- Using Alice's computer and wireless client, and the correct security settings, do the following.
Attempt to access Server 1. You should be able to do so.
Attempt to access the Internet. You should be able to do so.
Attempt to access Server 2. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, layer-2 isolation is misconfigured.
- Using Alice's computer and wireless client, and incorrect security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER_1 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, security is misconfigured.
- Using another computer and wireless client, but with the correct security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER_1 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, MAC filtering is misconfigured.

2 Test the SERVER_2 network.

- Using Bob's computer and wireless client, and the correct security settings, do the following.
Attempt to access Server 2. You should be able to do so.
Attempt to access the Internet. You should be able to do so.
Attempt to access Server 1. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, layer-2 isolation is misconfigured.
- Using Bob's computer and wireless client, and incorrect security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER_2 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, security is misconfigured.
- Using another computer and wireless client, but with the correct security settings, attempt to associate with the SERVER_2 network. You should be unable to do so. If you can do so, MAC filtering is misconfigured.

If you cannot do something that you should be able to do, check the settings as described in [Section 3.4.6.1 on page 72](#), and in the individual Security, layer-2 isolation and MAC filter profiles for the relevant network. If this does not help, see the Troubleshooting chapter in this User's Guide.

Status Screens

The **Status** screen displays when you log into the ZyXEL Device, or click **STATUS** in the navigation menu.

Use the **Status** screens to look at the current status of the device, system resources, interfaces and SSID status. The **Status** screen also provides detailed information about associated wireless clients, channel usage, logs and detected rogue APs.



Fields in this screen may differ depending on the ZyXEL Device model you are using.



These screens display differently when the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode (see [Section 6.1 on page 83](#)). At the time of writing, AP controller mode is available on the NWA-3160 only).

4.1 The Status Screen

Click **Status**. The following screen displays.

Figure 42 The Status Screen

STATUS

Automatic Refresh Interval: None Refresh

System Information	
System Name	NWA-Series
Model	NWA-3160
Firmware Version	V3.60(AAL.1)b2 01/28/2008
System UP Time	06:37:20
Current Date Time	06:37:17 2000/01/01
WLAN Operating Mode	AP
Management VLAN	Disable
IP	192.168.1.2
LAN MAC	00:19:cb:11:22:33
WLAN MAC	00:19:cb:11:22:33

System Resources	
Flash	2/4 MB
Memory	19/32 MB
CPU	75%
WLAN Associations	0/128

Interface Status		
Interface	Status	Rate
LAN	Up	100M/Full
WLAN	Up(Ch6)	54M

SSID	BSSID	Security	VLAN
ZyXEL03	00:19:cb:11:22:33	None	Disabled

System Status

Show Statistics Association List Channel Usage LOGS Rogue AP List

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 The Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Automatic Refresh Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen immediately.
System Information	
System Name	This field displays the ZyXEL Device system name. It is used for identification. You can change this in the System > General screen's System Name field.
Model	This field displays the ZyXEL Device's exact model name.
Firmware Version	This field displays the current version of the firmware inside the device. It also shows the date the firmware version was created. You can change the firmware version by uploading new firmware in Maintenance > F/W Upload .
System Up Time	This field displays the elapsed time since the ZyXEL Device was turned on.
Current Date Time	This field displays the date and time configured on the ZyXEL Device. You can change this in the System > Time Setting screen.
WLAN Operating Mode	This field displays the current operating mode of the first wireless module (AP , Bridge / Repeater , AP + Bridge or MBSSID). You can change the operating mode in the Wireless > Wireless screen.
Management VLAN	This field displays the management VLAN ID if VLAN is active, or Disabled if it is not active. You can enable or disable VLAN, or change the management VLAN ID, in the VLAN > Wireless VLAN screen.
IP	This field displays the current IP address of the ZyXEL Device on the network.
LAN MAC	This displays the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the ZyXEL Device on the LAN. Every network device has a unique MAC address which identifies it across the network.
WLAN MAC	This displays the MAC address of the wireless module.

Table 10 The Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Resources	
Flash	This field displays the amount of the ZyXEL Device's flash memory currently in use. The flash memory is used to store firmware and SSID profiles.
Memory	This field displays what percentage of the ZyXEL Device's volatile memory is currently in use. The higher the memory usage, the more likely the ZyXEL Device is to slow down. Some memory is required just to start the ZyXEL Device and to run the web configurator.
CPU	This field displays what percentage of the ZyXEL Device's processing ability is currently being used. The higher the CPU usage, the more likely the ZyXEL Device is to slow down.
WLAN Associations	This field displays the number of wireless clients currently associated with the wireless module. Each wireless module supports up to 128 concurrent associations.
Interface Status	
Interface	This column displays each interface of the ZyXEL Device.
Status	This field indicates whether or not the ZyXEL Device is using the interface. For each interface, this field displays Up when the ZyXEL Device is using the interface and Down when the ZyXEL Device is not using the interface. For the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163, this also displays the wireless channel number(s).
Channel (NWA-3165 Only)	For the WLAN interface, this field displays the ZyXEL Device's active wireless channel number(s).
Rate	For the LAN port this displays the port speed and duplex setting. For the WLAN interface, it displays the downstream and upstream transmission rate or N/A if the interface is not in use.
SSID Status	
SSID	This field displays the SSID(s) currently used by the wireless module.
BSSID	This field displays the MAC address of the wireless adaptor.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless security used by each SSID.
VLAN	This field displays the VLAN ID of each SSID in use, or Disabled if the SSID does not use VLAN.
System Status	
Show Statistics	Click this link to view port status and packet specific statistics. See Section 19.2.1 on page 228 .
Association List	Click this to see a list of wireless clients currently associated to each of the ZyXEL Device's wireless modules. See Section 19.3 on page 228 .
Channel Usage (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)	Click this to see which wireless channels are currently in use in the local area. See Section 19.4 on page 229 .
Logs	Click this to see a list of logs produced by the ZyXEL Device. See Section 17.1 on page 201 .
Rogue AP List (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)	Click this to see a list of unauthorized access points in the local area. See Section 13.3.3 on page 163 .

Management Mode

This chapter discusses the **MGNT MODE** (Management Mode) screen (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only). This screen determines whether the ZyXEL Device is used in its default, standalone mode, or as part of a CAPWAP (Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points) network.

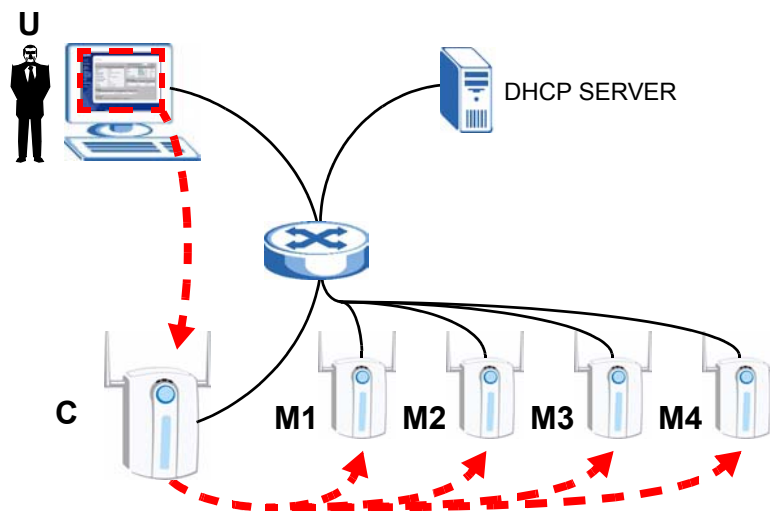
5.1 About CAPWAP

The NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 support CAPWAP (Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points). This is ZyXEL's implementation of the IETF's (Internet Engineering Task Force) CAPWAP protocol (RFC 4118).

The CAPWAP dataflow is protected by DTLS (Datagram Transport Layer Security).

The following figure illustrates a CAPWAP wireless network. You (**U**) configure the AP controller (**C**), which then automatically updates the configurations of the managed APs (**M1** ~ **M4**).

Figure 43 CAPWAP Network Example



5.1.1 CAPWAP Discovery and Management

The link between CAPWAP-enabled access points proceeds as follows:

- 1 An AP in managed AP mode joins a wired network (receives a dynamic IP address).

- 2 The AP sends out a management request, looking for an AP in CAPWAP AP controller mode.
- 3 If there is an AP controller on the network, it receives the management request. If the AP controller is in **Manual** mode (see [Section 6.3.3 on page 91](#)) it adds the details of the AP to its **Unmanaged Access Points** list (see [Section 6.3.1 on page 88](#)), and you decide which available APs to manage. If the AP is in **Always Accept** mode, it automatically adds the AP to its **Managed Access Points** list and provides the managed AP with default configuration information, as well as securely transmitting the DTLS (Datagram Transport Layer Security) pre-shared key. The managed AP is ready for association with wireless clients.

5.1.2 CAPWAP and DHCP

CAPWAP managed APs must be DHCP clients, supplied with an IP address by a DHCP server on your network.

Furthermore, the AP controller must have a static IP address; it cannot be a DHCP client.

5.1.3 CAPWAP and IP Subnets

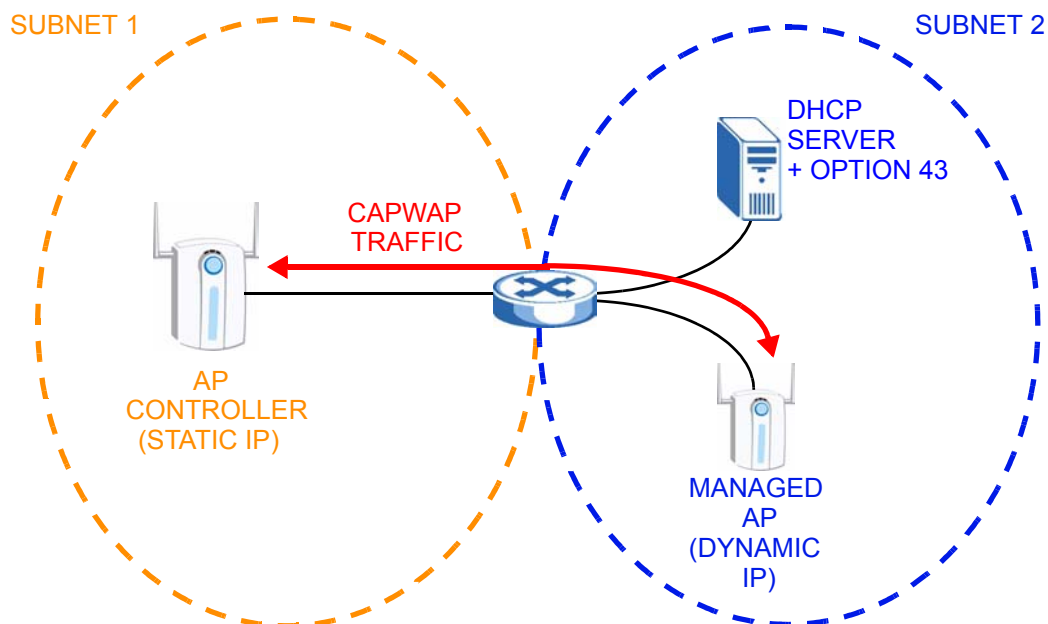
By default, CAPWAP works only between devices with IP addresses in the same subnet (see the appendices for information on IP addresses and subnetting).

However, you can configure CAPWAP to operate between devices with IP addresses in different subnets by doing the following.

- Activate DHCP option 43 on your network's DHCP server.
- Configure DHCP option 43 with the IP address of the CAPWAP AP controller on your network.

DHCP Option 43 allows the CAPWAP management request (from the AP in managed AP mode) to reach the AP controller in a different subnet, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 44 CAPWAP and DHCP Option 43



5.1.4 Notes on CAPWAP

This section lists some additional features of ZyXEL's implementation of the CAPWAP protocol.

- When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode and uses its internal RADIUS server (see [Chapter 15 on page 177](#)), managed APs also use the ZyXEL Device's authentication server to authenticate wireless clients.
- Only one AP controller can exist in any single broadcast domain.
- If a managed AP's link to the AP controller is broken, the managed AP continues to use the wireless settings with which it was last provided.

5.2 The Management Mode Screen

Use this screen to configure the ZyXEL Device as a CAPWAP controller (NWA-3160 only) or managed AP, or to use it in its default standalone mode.

Click **MGNT MODE** in the ZyXEL Device's navigation menu. The following screen displays.



Not all ZyXEL Device models display all the labels in this screen.

Figure 45 The Management Mode Screen

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 The Management Mode Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
AP Controller	Select this to use the ZyXEL Device to manage up to eight other compatible ZyXEL access points on your network.
Standalone AP	Select this to manage the ZyXEL Device using its own web configurator, neither managing nor managed by other devices.

Table 11 The Management Mode Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Managed AP	<p>Select this to have the ZyXEL Device managed by another ZyXEL Device on your network.</p> <p>When you do this, the ZyXEL Device can be configured ONLY by the management AP.</p> <p>If you do not have an AP controller on your network and want to return the ZyXEL Device to standalone mode, you must use its physical RESET button. All settings are returned to their default values.</p> <p>Note: When you set the ZyXEL Device to Managed AP mode, it becomes a DHCP client. To discover its new IP address, check the DHCP server on your network. If your network has no DHCP server, the ZyXEL Device's IP address remains the same. You can also check the Controller > AP Lists screen of the AP controller on your network.</p>
Apply	<p>Click this to save your changes.</p> <p>Note: If you change the mode in this screen, the ZyXEL Device restarts. Wait a short while before you attempt to log in again. If you changed the mode to Managed AP, you cannot log in as the web configurator is disabled; you must manage the ZyXEL Device through the management AP on your network.</p>
Reset	<p>Click this to return this screen to its previously-saved settings.</p>

AP Controller Mode (NWA-3160 Only)

When the ZyXEL Device is an AP controller, it can manage other access points. You configure settings for the AP controller and the managed access points in the AP controller, which then sends the configuration details to the managed APs.

The ZyXEL Device can manage compatible access points only (see [Section 1.3 on page 38](#) for a list of compatible access points). AP controller mode is part of the ZyXEL CAPWAP implementation.

Use the **Management Mode** screen to set your ZyXEL Device to AP controller mode (see [Section 5.2 on page 81](#)).

6.1 Status Screen

When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, the **Status** screen acquires some new fields in the **System Information**, **AP Status**, **WLAN Association** and **System Status** sections. The **System Status** links take you to screens that provide information on the access points managed by the ZyXEL Device.

Click **Status**. The following screen displays.

Figure 46 AP Controller: the Status Screen

System Information	
System Name	NWA-Series
Model	NWA-3160
Firmware Version	V3.60(AAL.1)b2 01/28/2008
System UP Time	01:31:01
Current Date Time	01:30:58 2000/01/01
Management VLAN	Disable
Rogue AP Detection	Disable
IP	192.168.1.2
LAN MAC	00:19:cb:11:22:33
Registration Type	Manual
Management Mode	Controller

System Resources	
Flash	2 / 4 MB
Memory	20 / 32 MB
CPU	0%

AP Status	
On-line	1
Off-line	0
Un-Managed	0

WLAN Association	
802.11a	0
802.11b/g	0

System Status					
AP List	AP Statistics	Association List	SSID Information	LOGS	Rogue AP List

The following table describes the new labels in this screen.

Table 12 AP Controller: the Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Registration Type	This field displays how the managed APs are registered with the ZyXEL Device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manual displays if you add unmanaged APs to the ZyXEL Device's list of managed APs manually. Always Accept displays if the ZyXEL Device automatically manages any CAPWAP-enabled AP that transmits a management request over the network.
Management Mode	When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, this displays Controller .
On-line	This field displays the number of access points, managed by the ZyXEL Device, that are currently active.
Off-line	This field displays the number of access points, managed by the ZyXEL Device, that are not currently active (turned off or otherwise unreachable on the network).
Un-managed	This field displays the number of access points on the network that are not managed by the ZyXEL Device, but are transmitting CAPWAP management requests.
802.11a	This field displays the number of wireless clients associated with APs managed by the ZyXEL Device (including the ZyXEL Device itself) using IEEE 802.1a.
802.11b/g	This field displays the number of wireless clients associated with APs managed by the ZyXEL Device (including the ZyXEL Device itself) using IEEE 802.1b or IEEE 802.11g.
AP List	Click this to see a list of the APs managed by the ZyXEL Device. See Section 6.1.1 on page 84 .
AP Statistics	Click this to see packet statistics related to each of the APs managed by the ZyXEL Device. See Section 6.1.2 on page 85 .
Association List	Click this to see information about each of the wireless clients connected to APs managed by the ZyXEL Device. See Section 6.1.3 on page 86 .
SSID Information	Click this to see details of the security settings used by each SSID (Service Set Identifier), and the number of wireless clients associated with each SSID. See Section 6.1.4 on page 86 .

6.1.1 The AP List Status Screen

Use this screen to see a list of the APs managed by the ZyXEL Device. When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, click **AP List** in the **Status** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 47 AP List Status

AP Description	Model	Radio MAC	802.11 Mode	Channel ID	SSID List	VLAN	Stations
Local-AP	NWA-3160	00:19:CB:11:22:33	802.11b/g	Auto(11)	ZyXEL03	-	0
Refresh							

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 13 AP List Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
AP Description	This is the description of the managed AP (either generated automatically, or entered by you).
Model	This is the managed AP's model number.
Radio MAC	This is the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the managed AP's wireless adapter.
802.11 Mode	This displays the IEEE 802.11 wireless mode the managed AP is currently using.
Channel ID	This displays the wireless channel number the managed AP is currently using.
SSID List	This displays the SSID (Service Set Identifier) that the managed AP is currently using.
VLAN	This displays the VLAN ID (Virtual LAN Identifier) assigned to this managed AP.
Stations	This displays the number of wireless clients currently associated with the managed AP.

6.1.2 The AP Statistics Screen

Use this screen to statistics relating to the APs managed by the ZyXEL Device. When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, click **AP Statistics** in the **Status** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 48 AP Statistics

AP Description	802.11 Mode	Channel ID	Rx PKT	Tx PKT	Retry Count	FCS Error Count
Local-AP	802.11b/g	Auto(11)	3528	5062	7	240

Automatic Refresh Interval: Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 AP Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
AP Description	This is the description of the managed AP (either generated automatically, or entered by you).
802.11 Mode	This displays the IEEE 802.11 wireless mode the managed AP is currently using.
Channel ID	This displays the wireless channel number the managed AP is currently using.
Rx PKT	This displays the number of packets transmitted by the managed AP.
Tx PKT	This displays the number of packets received by the managed AP.
Retry Count	This displays the number of times a managed AP tries to resend packets.
FCS Error Count	This displays the number of Frame Check Sequence errors experienced by the managed AP.

Table 14 AP Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Automatic Refresh Interval	Select the frequency with which the ZyXEL Device updates this screen.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen immediately.

6.1.3 The AP Association List Screen

Use this screen to see information about the wireless clients associated to the APs managed by the ZyXEL Device. When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, click **Association List** in the **Status** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 49 AP Association List

Index	MAC	Associated AP	SSID	Security Mode	Association Time ▲	Signal Lvl.
1	00:13:49:00:00:01	AP-0019CB00AAA4	WTPZyXEL13	WPA2	21:30:43 2000/01/01	100%

Automatic Refresh Interval: Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 15 AP Association List

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the associated client's index number.
MAC	This displays the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the associated wireless client.
Associated AP	This displays the description of the managed access point to which the wireless client is associated.
SSID	This displays the SSID (Service Set Identifier) with which the wireless client is associated.
Security Mode	This displays the type of security used by SSID to which the wireless client is associated.
Association Time	This displays the length of time that the wireless client has been associated with the managed AP.
Signal Lvl.	This displays the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Intensity) of the link between the wireless client and the managed AP with which it is associated.
Automatic Refresh Interval	Select the frequency with which ZyXEL Device updates this screen.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen immediately.

6.1.4 The SSID Information Screen

Use this screen to see the security settings used by each wireless network controlled by the AP controller, and the number of wireless clients associated with each network. Each network is identified by its SSID (Service Set Identifier), which is the name of the network.

The information that displays does not differentiate by access point. Your network may have several APs using the same SSID. This screen displays the number of wireless clients using the SSID regardless of which AP they are associated with.

When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, click **SSID Information** in the **Status** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 50 SSID Information

SSID	Security Mode	Stations
WTPZyXEL13	WPA2	1

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

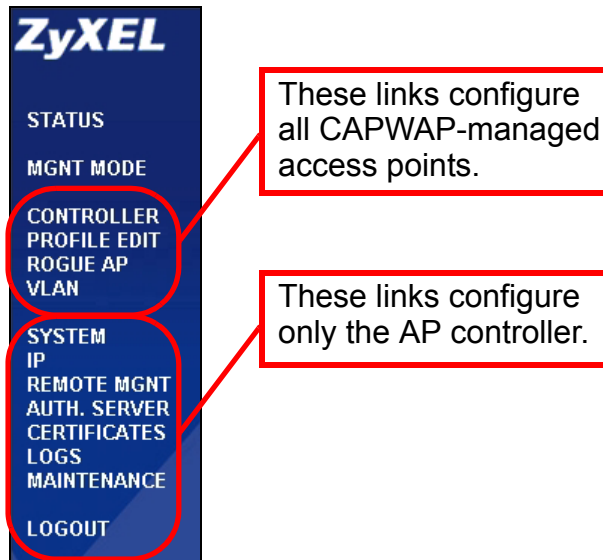
Table 16 AP Association List

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	This displays the SSID (Service Set Identifier) that identifies your wireless network. Each AP may use a different SSID (or different multiple SSIDs).
Security Mode	This displays the type of security used by the wireless network. A network's security settings are the same regardless of the AP on which it is running.
Stations	This displays the number of wireless clients using the wireless network.

6.2 Navigation Bar

When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, the navigation bar on the left of the web configurator screen is different from standalone mode.

Figure 51 AP Controller: Links



The following table describes the labels in the navigation bar.

Table 17 Navigation Bar Labels

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
STATUS	Click this to go to the Status screen (see Section 4.1 on page 75).
MGNT MODE	Click this to go to the Management Mode screen (see Section 5.2 on page 81).

Table 17 Navigation Bar Labels

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
CONTROLLER	Click this to go to the Controller screens (see Section 6.3 on page 88).
PROFILE EDIT	Click this to go to the Profile Edit screens (see Section 6.4 on page 92).
ROGUE AP	Click this to go to the Rogue AP screens (see Section 13.3 on page 161).
VLAN	Click this to go to the VLAN screens (see Section 18.2 on page 210).
SYSTEM	Click this to go to the System screens (see Section 19.2 on page 227).
IP	Click this to go to the IP screen (see Section 12.3 on page 158).
REMOTE MGNT	Click this to go to the Remote Management screens (see Chapter 14 on page 165).
AUTH. SERVER	Click this to go to the Authentication Server screens (see Section 15.1 on page 177).
CERTIFICATES	Click this to go to the Certificates screens (see Chapter 16 on page 183).
LOGS	Click this to go to the Logs screens (see Chapter 17 on page 201).
MAINTENANCE	Click this to go to the Maintenance screens (see Chapter 19 on page 227).
LOGOUT	Click this to log out of the ZyXEL Device.

6.3 The Controller Screens

This section discusses the **Controller** screens that display when the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode (NWA-3160 only).

6.3.1 The AP Lists Screen

When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, click **CONTROLLER > AP Lists**. The following screen displays.

Figure 52 The Controller > AP Lists Screen

The screenshot shows the 'AP Lists' configuration page. It has two tabs: 'AP Lists' (selected) and 'Configuration'. The main content is divided into two sections: 'Managed Access Points List' and 'Un-Managed Access Points List'.

Managed Access Points List

Index	Select	IP	MAC Address	Model	Description	Status
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	127.0.0.1	00:19:CB:9C:CA:DD	NWA-3500 802.11a/g	AP-LOCAL	
2	<input type="radio"/>	192.168.1.150	00:A0:C5:31:60:02	NWA-3163 802.11g	AP-00A0C5316002	
3	<input type="radio"/>	192.168.1.152	00:19:CB:00:AA:A4	NWA-3163 802.11g	AP-0019CB00AAA4	

Below the table are 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons.

Un-Managed Access Points List

Index	Select	IP	MAC Address	Model	Description
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	192.168.1.153	00:19:CB:AA:BB:04	NWA-3163 802.11g	AP-0019CBAABB04
2	<input type="radio"/>	192.168.1.155	00:A0:C5:31:60:04	NWA-3160 802.11a/g	AP-00A0C5316004
3	<input type="radio"/>	192.168.1.151	00:A0:C5:31:63:01	NWA-3163 802.11g	AP-00A0C5316301
4	<input type="radio"/>	192.168.1.154	00:A0:C5:31:60:06	NWA-3160 802.11a/g	AP-00A0C5316006

Below the table is an 'Add' button.

At the bottom, there is an 'Automatic Refresh Interval' dropdown set to 'None' and a 'Refresh' button.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18 The Controller > AP Lists Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Managed Access Points List	This section lists the access points currently controlled by the ZyXEL Device. This always includes the ZyXEL Device itself.
Index	This is the index number of the AP.
Select	Choose the AP whose Description you want to edit or delete, or whose radio profile you want to change.
IP	This is the IP address of the AP.
MAC Address	This is the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the AP.
Model	This is the model number of the AP.
Description	This is the description you enter for the AP.
Status	This displays whether the AP is currently active. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Red: the AP is not active. Green: the AP is active. Yellow: the AP is upgrading its firmware.
Edit	Choose an AP using the Select field, then click this to change the AP's Description , or the radio profile it uses. The AP Lists Edit screen displays (see Section 6.3.2 on page 90).
Delete	Choose an AP using the Select field, then click this to remove the AP from the Managed AP list. You cannot remove the ZyXEL Device itself from the list.

Table 18 The Controller > AP Lists Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Unmanaged Access Points List	This section lists the CAPWAP-enabled access points in the area that are in managed AP mode, but are not currently controlled by the ZyXEL Device.
Index	This is the index number of the unmanaged AP.
Select	Choose the unmanaged AP to have managed by the ZyXEL Device and click Add .
IP	This is the IP address of the unmanaged AP.
MAC Address	This is the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the unmanaged AP.
Model	This is the model number of the unmanaged AP.
Description	This is the description you enter for the unmanaged AP.
Add	Click this to add an unmanaged AP to the Managed Access Points list.
Automatic Refresh Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen immediately.

6.3.2 The AP Lists Edit Screen

Use this screen to change the description or radio profile of an AP managed by the ZyXEL Device. Click **Edit** in the **CONTROLLER > AP Lists** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 53 The Controller > AP Lists > Edit Screen

The screenshot shows the 'AP Configuration' screen. At the top, there's a tab labeled 'Access Point'. Below it, the 'Model' is set to 'NWA-3160' and the 'MAC Address' is '00:19:CB:11:22:33'. The 'Description' field is empty. Under the 'WLAN1 Radio Profile' section, a dropdown menu is set to 'Disable'. At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 The Controller > AP Lists > Edit Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Model	This is the model number of the managed AP.
MAC Address	This is the MAC (Media Access Control) address of the managed AP.
Description	Enter a short description of this access point (up to 32 English keyboard characters).
WLAN1 Radio Profile	Select the radio profile you want to use for this AP. Configure radio profiles in the Profile Edit > Radio screen. Select Disable if you do not want to use a radio profile. The AP's radio is not active when you select Disable .

Table 19 The Controller > AP Lists > Edit Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WLAN2 Radio Profile	This field displays only if the managed AP has dual radios. Select the second radio profile you want to use for this AP. Configure radio profiles in the Profile Edit > Radio screen. Select Disable if you do not want to use a second radio profile. The AP's radio is not active when you select Disable .
Apply	Click this to save the changes in this screen.
Reset	Click this to return the fields in this screen to their previously-saved values.

6.3.3 The Configuration Screen

Use this screen to control the way in which the ZyXEL Device accepts new APs to manage. You can also configure the pre-shared key (PSK) that is use to secure the data transmitted between the ZyXEL Device and the APs it manages.

When the ZyXEL Device is in AP controller mode, click **CONTROLLER** > **Configuration**. The following screen displays.

Figure 54 The Controller > Configuration Screen

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 The Controller > Configuration Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Pre-Shared Key	This is the security key used to encrypt communications between the ZyXEL Device and its managed APs. This key is used to encrypt DTLS (Datagram Transport Layer Security) transmissions. Enter 8~32 English keyboard characters. The proprietary AutoPSK protocol transfers the DTLS key from the ZyXEL Device to the manages AP automatically.
Registration Type	This controls whether the ZyXEL Device manages all CAPWAP-enabled APs that transmit management request packets, or requires the user to select which such APs to manage. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Manual to choose which APs to manage (select the APs you want to manage in the Controller > AP Lists screen). Select Always Accept to manage any AP on your network that transmits a CAPWAP request for management.
Apply	Click this to save the changes in this screen.
Reset	Click this to return the fields in this screen to their previously-saved values.

6.4 The Profile Edit Screens

This section describes the **Profile Edit** screens, which are available only in AP controller mode (NWA-3160 only).

The following **Profile Edit** screens are identical to those available in standalone mode:

- The **Profile Edit > SSID** screen (see [Section 10.2.1 on page 142](#)).
- The **Profile Edit > Security** screen (see [Section 9.9 on page 128](#)).
- The **Profile Edit > RADIUS** screen (see [Section 9.11 on page 136](#)).
- The **Profile Edit > Layer-2 Isolation** screen (see [Section 11.2 on page 148](#)).
- The **Profile Edit > MAC Filter** screen (see [Section 11.4 on page 152](#)).

6.4.1 The Radio Profile Screen

Use this screen to configure radio profiles. Radio profiles contain information about an access point's wireless settings, and can be applied to APs managed by the ZyXEL Device.

In AP Controller mode (NWA-3160 only) click **Profile Edit > Radio**. The following screen displays.

Figure 55 The Profile Edit > Radio Screen

Radio	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
	Index	Profile Name	802.11 Mode	Channel ID	
	1	radio01	802.11b/g	Auto	
	2	radio02	802.11b/g	Auto	
	3	radio03	802.11b/g	Auto	
	4	radio04	802.11b/g	Auto	
	5	radio05	802.11b/g	Auto	
	6	radio06	802.11b/g	Auto	
	7	radio07	802.11b/g	Auto	
	8	radio08	802.11b/g	Auto	
	9	radio09	802.11b/g	Auto	
	10	radio10	802.11b/g	Auto	
	11	radio11	802.11b/g	Auto	
	12	radio12	802.11b/g	Auto	
	13	radio13	802.11b/g	Auto	
	14	radio14	802.11b/g	Auto	
	15	radio15	802.11b/g	Auto	
	16	radio16	802.11b/g	Auto	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 The Profile Edit > Radio Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of each radio profile.
Profile Name	This field displays the identification name of each radio profile on the ZyXEL Device.

Table 21 The Profile Edit > Radio Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.11 Mode	This field displays the IEEE 802.11 wireless mode the radio profile uses.
Channel ID	This field displays the wireless channel the radio profile uses.
Edit	Click the radio button next to the profile you want to configure and click Edit to go to the radio profile configuration screen.

6.5 The Radio Profile Edit Screen

Use this screen to configure a specific radio profile. In the **Profile Edit > Radio** screen, select a profile and click **Edit**. The following screen displays.

Figure 56 The Profile Edit > Radio > Edit Screen

Radio	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name <input type="text" value="radio06"/>					
802.11 Mode <input type="text" value="802.11b+g"/>					
<input type="checkbox"/> Super Mode					
Choose Channel ID <input type="text" value="Auto Selection"/>					
RTS/CTS Threshold <input type="text" value="2346"/> (256 ~ 2346)					
Fragmentation Threshold <input type="text" value="2346"/> (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)					
Output Power <input type="text" value="100%"/>					
Rates Configuration					
Rate	Configuration	Rate	Configuration		
1 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Basic"/>	2 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Basic"/>		
5.5 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Basic"/>	11 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Basic"/>		
6 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>	9 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>		
12 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>	18 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>		
24 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>	36 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>		
48 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>	54 Mbps	<input type="text" value="Optional"/>		
Select SSID Profile					
Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="SSID03"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Antenna Diversity					
<div style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </div>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 The Profile Edit > Radio > Edit Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a name identifying this profile.
802.11 Mode	<p>Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced.</p> <p>Select 802.11a (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p>
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	<p>Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Automatic Select instead.</p>
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to its smallest value (256) turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100%(Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Rates Configuration	<p>This section controls the data rates permitted for clients of an AP using this radio profile.</p> <p>For each Rate, select an option from the Configuration list. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic (1~11 Mbps only): Clients can always connect to the access point at this speed. • Optional: Clients can connect to the access point at this speed, when permitted to do so by the AP. • Disabled: Clients cannot connect to the access point at this speed.
Select SSID Profile	<p>Use this section to choose the SSID profile or profiles you want access points using this radio profile to use. Each AP can use multiple SSID profiles simultaneously.</p> <p>Configure SSID profiles in the Profile Edit > SSID screens.</p>
Index	This is the SSID profile's index number.
Active	Select this to use the SSID profile selected in the Profile field.
Profile	Select the profile you want to use. Ensure that you also select the Active box.
Enable Antenna Diversity	Select this to have access points using this radio profile use antenna diversity, where available. Antenna diversity uses multiple antennas to reduce signal interference.

Table 22 The Profile Edit > Radio > Edit Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click this to save your changes.
Reset	Click this to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

PART II

The Web Configurator

System Screens (99)
Wireless Configuration (105)
Wireless Security Configuration (123)
MBSSID and SSID (139)
Other Wireless Configuration (147)
IP Screen (157)
Rogue AP (159)
Remote Management Screens (165)
Internal RADIUS Server (177)
Certificates (183)
Log Screens (201)
VLAN (209)
Maintenance (227)

System Screens

7.1 System Overview

This section provides information on general system setup.

7.2 Configuring General Setup

Click **SYSTEM > General**.

Figure 57 System > General

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 System > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setup	
System Name	Type a descriptive name to identify the ZyXEL Device in the Ethernet network. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.
Domain Name	This is not a required field. Leave this field blank or enter the domain name here if you know it.
Administrator Inactivity Timer	Type how many minutes a management session (either via the web configurator or SMT) can be left idle before the session times out. The default is 5 minutes. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. A value of "0" means a management session never times out, no matter how long it has been left idle (not recommended).
System DNS Servers	

Table 23 System > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Select From DHCP if your DHCP server dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the ZyXEL Device's Ethernet IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the DHCP assigns. Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a machine in order to access it. The default setting is None .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

7.3 Administrator Authentication on RADIUS

The administrator authentication on RADIUS feature lets a (external or internal) RADIUS server authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device. This is useful if you need to regularly change a password that you use to manage several ZyXEL Devices.

Activate administrator authentication on RADIUS in the **SYSTEM > Password** screen and configure the same user name, password and RADIUS server information on each ZyXEL Device. Then, whenever you want to change the password, just change it on the RADIUS server.

7.3.1 Configuring the Password

It is strongly recommended that you change your ZyXEL Device's password. Click **SYSTEM > Password**. The screen appears as shown.

If you forget your ZyXEL Device's password (or IP address), you will need to reset the device. See the section on resetting the ZyXEL Device for details



Regardless of how you configure this screen, you still use the local system password to log in via the console port (not available on all models).

Figure 58 SYSTEM > Password.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Password

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Enable Admin at Local	Select this check box to have the device authenticate management logins to the device.
Use old setting	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device use the local management password already configured on the device ("1234" is the default).
Use new setting	Select this if you want to change the local management password.
Old Password	Type in your existing system password ("1234" is the default password).
New Password	Type your new system password (up to 31 characters). Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Retype to Confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation.
Enable Admin on RADIUS	Select this (and configure the other fields in this section) to have a RADIUS server authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device.
Use old setting	Select this to have a RADIUS server authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device using the RADIUS username and password already configured on the device.
Use new setting	Select this if you want to change the RADIUS username and password the ZyXEL Device uses to authenticate management logon.
User Name	Enter the username for this user account. This name can be up to 31 ASCII characters long, including spaces.
Password	Type a password (up to 31 ASCII characters) for this user profile. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays a (*) for each character you type. Spaces are allowed. Note: If you are using PEAP authentication, this password field is limited to 14 ASCII characters in length.

Table 24 Password

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
RADIUS	<p>Select the RADIUS server profile of the RADIUS server that is to authenticate management logins to the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>The ZyXEL Device tests the user name and password against the RADIUS server when you apply your settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The user name and password must already be configured in the RADIUS server. You must already have a RADIUS profile configured for the RADIUS server (see Section 9.11 on page 136). The server must be set to Active in the profile.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

7.4 Configuring Time Setting

To change your ZyXEL Device's time and date, click **SYSTEM > Time Setting**. The screen appears as shown. Use this screen to configure the ZyXEL Device's time based on your local time zone.

Figure 59 SYSTEM > Time Setting

The screenshot displays the 'SYSTEM > Time Setting' configuration interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'General', 'Password', and 'Time Setting', with 'Time Setting' being the active tab. The interface is organized into several sections:

- Current Time and Date:** This section shows the 'Current Time' as 00:33:4 and the 'Current Date' as 2000-01-01.
- Time and Date Setup:** This section allows for manual or automatic time setting. The 'Manual' option is selected. Under 'Manual', the 'New Time (hh:mm:ss)' is set to 0:20:24 and the 'New Date (yyyy/mm/dd)' is set to 2000/1/1. There are also radio buttons for 'Get from Time Server', with 'Auto' selected and 'User Defined Time Server Address' left empty.
- Time Zone Setup:** This section features a 'Time Zone' dropdown menu currently set to '(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London'.
- Daylight Savings:** This section includes a checkbox for 'Daylight Savings' (which is unchecked) and fields for 'Start Date' and 'End Date'. Both are set to 'First' of 'Sunday' of 'January' (2000-01-02) at '0' o'clock.

At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 SYSTEM > Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Time	This field displays the time of your ZyXEL Device. Each time you reload this page, the ZyXEL Device synchronizes the time with the time server (if configured).
Current Date	This field displays the last updated date from the time server.
Manual	Select this radio button to enter the time and date manually. If you configure a new time and date, time zone and daylight saving at the same time, the time zone and daylight saving will affect the new time and date you entered.
New Time (hh:mm:ss)	This field displays the last updated time from the time server or the last time configured manually. When you set Time and Date Setup to Manual , enter the new time in this field and then click Apply .
New Date (yyyy:mm:dd)	This field displays the last updated date from the time server or the last date configured manually. When you set Time and Date Setup to Manual , enter the new date in this field and then click Apply .
Get from Time Server	Select this radio button to have the ZyXEL Device get the time and date from the time server you specify below.
Auto	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device use the predefined list of time servers.
User Defined Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or URL of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Time Zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Savings	Select this option if you use daylight savings time. Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected Yes in the Daylight Saving field. The hr field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Second, Sunday, March and 2:00 . Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Mar., Last, Sun . The time you type in the hr field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type "02" because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected Yes in the Daylight Saving field. The hr field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First, Sunday, November and 2:00 . Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Oct., Last, Sun . The time you type in the hr field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).

Table 25 SYSTEM > Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

7.5 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List

When you turn on the ZyXEL Device for the first time, the date and time start at 2000-01-01 00:00:00. When you select **Auto** in the **SYSTEM > Time Setting** screen, the ZyXEL Device then attempts to synchronize with one of the following pre-defined list of NTP time servers.

The ZyXEL Device continues to use the following pre-defined list of NTP time servers if you do not specify a time server or it cannot synchronize with the time server you specified.

Table 26 Default Time Servers

ntp1.cs.wisc.edu
ntp1.gbg.netnod.se
ntp2.cs.wisc.edu
tock.usno.navy.mil
ntp3.cs.wisc.edu
ntp.cs.strath.ac.uk
ntp1.sp.se
time1.stupi.se
tick.stdtime.gov.tw
tock.stdtime.gov.tw
time.stdtime.gov.tw

When the ZyXEL Device uses the pre-defined list of NTP time servers, it randomly selects one server and tries to synchronize with it. If the synchronization fails, then the ZyXEL Device goes through the rest of the list in order from the first one tried until either it is successful or all the pre-defined NTP time servers have been tried.

Wireless Configuration

This chapter discusses how to configure the ZyXEL Device's **Wireless** screens.

8.1 Wireless LAN Overview

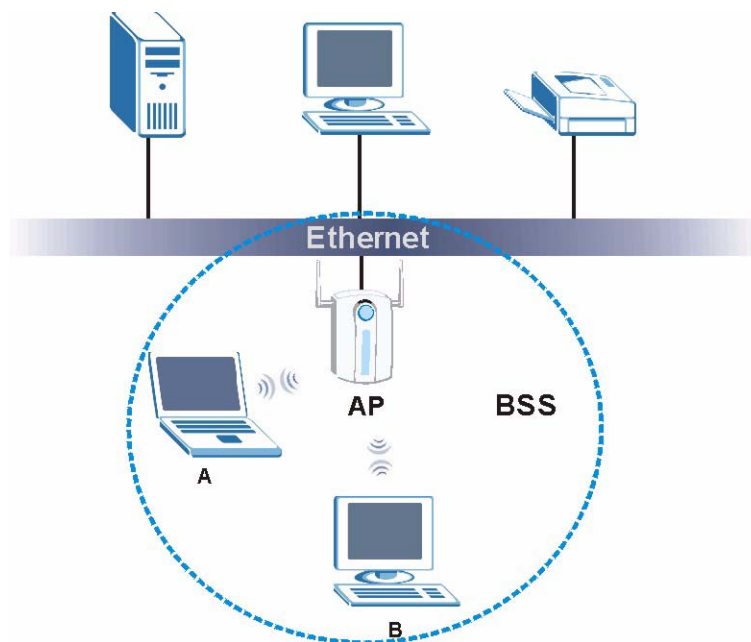
This section introduces the wireless LAN (WLAN) and some basic scenarios.

8.1.1 BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless stations or between a wireless station and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless stations in the BSS. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is disabled, wireless station A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS traffic blocking is enabled, wireless station A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

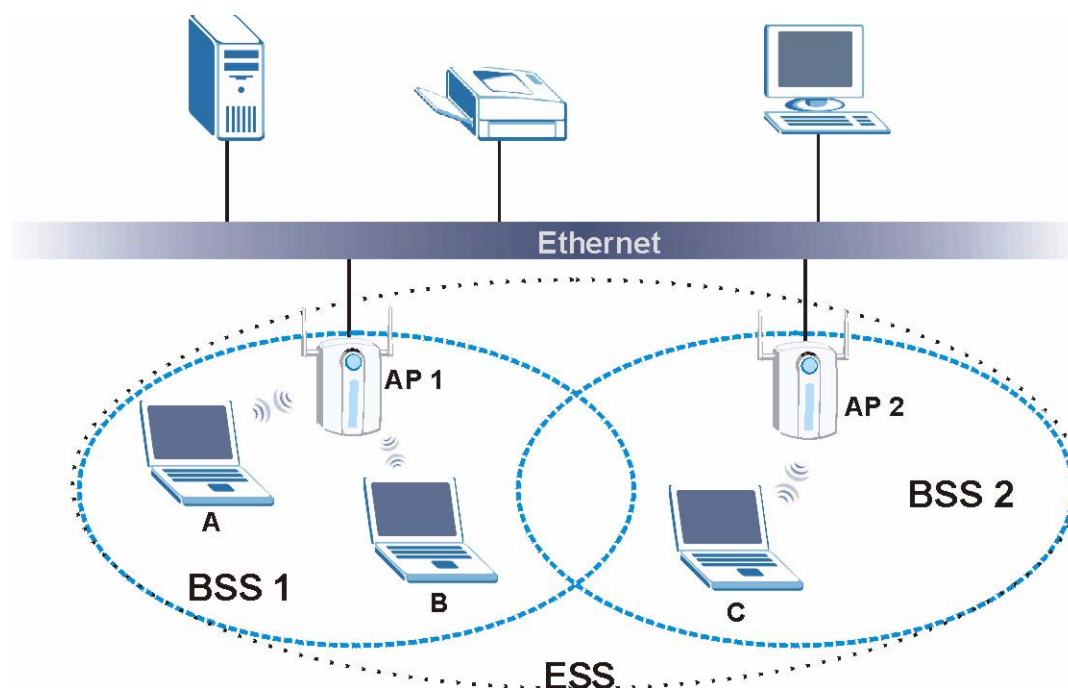
Figure 60 Basic Service set



8.1.2 ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS). An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless stations within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

Figure 61 Extended Service Set



8.2 Wireless LAN Basics

See the Wireless LANs Appendix for information on the following:

- Wireless LAN Topologies
- Channel
- RTS/CTS
- Fragmentation Threshold
- IEEE 802.1x
- RADIUS
- Types of Authentication
- WPA
- Security Parameters Summary

8.3 Quality of Service

This section discusses the Quality of Service (QoS) features available on the ZyXEL Device.

8.3.1 WMM QoS

WMM (Wi-Fi MultiMedia) QoS (Quality of Service) ensures quality of service in wireless networks. It controls WLAN transmission priority on packets to be transmitted over the wireless network.

WMM QoS prioritizes wireless traffic according to the delivery requirements of the individual and applications. WMM QoS is a part of the IEEE 802.11e QoS enhancement to certified Wi-Fi wireless networks.

On APs without WMM QoS, all traffic streams are given the same access priority to the wireless network. If the introduction of another traffic stream creates a data transmission demand that exceeds the current network capacity, then the new traffic stream reduces the throughput of the other traffic streams.

The ZyXEL Device uses WMM QoS to prioritize traffic streams according to the IEEE 802.1q or DSCP information in each packet's header. The ZyXEL Device automatically determines the priority to use for an individual traffic stream. This prevents reductions in data transmission for applications that are sensitive to latency and jitter (variations in delay).

8.3.1.1 WMM QoS Priorities

The following table describes the WMM QoS priority levels that the ZyXEL Device uses.

Table 27 WMM QoS Priorities

PRIORITY LEVEL	DESCRIPTION
voice (WMM_VOICE)	Typically used for traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter. Use this priority to reduce latency for improved voice quality.
video (WMM_VIDEO)	Typically used for traffic which has some tolerance for jitter but needs to be prioritized over other data traffic.
best effort (WMM_BEST_EFFORT)	Typically used for traffic from applications or devices that lack QoS capabilities. Use best effort priority for traffic that is less sensitive to latency, but is affected by long delays, such as Internet surfing.
background (WMM_BACKGROUND)	This is typically used for non-critical traffic such as bulk transfers and print jobs that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users. Use background priority for applications that do not have strict latency and throughput requirements.

8.3.2 ATC

Automatic Traffic Classifier (ATC) is a bandwidth management tool that prioritizes data packets sent across the network. ATC assigns each packet a priority and then queues the packet accordingly. Packets assigned a high priority are processed more quickly than those with low priority if there is congestion, allowing time-sensitive applications to flow more smoothly. Time-sensitive applications include both those that require a low level of latency and a low level of jitter such as Voice over IP or Internet gaming, and those for which jitter alone is a problem such as Internet radio or streaming video.

ATC assigns priority based on packet size, since time-sensitive applications such as Internet telephony (Voice over IP or VoIP) tend to have smaller packet sizes than non-time sensitive applications such as FTP (File Transfer Protocol). The following table shows some common applications, their time sensitivity, and their typical data packet sizes. Note that the figures given are merely examples - sizes may differ according to application and circumstances.

Table 28 Typical Packet Sizes

APPLICATION	TIME SENSITIVITY	TYPICAL PACKET SIZE (BYTES)
Voice over IP (SIP)	High	< 250
Online Gaming	High	60 ~ 90
Web browsing (http)	Medium	300 ~ 600
FTP	Low	1500

When ATC is activated, the device sends traffic with smaller packets before traffic with larger packets if the network is congested.

ATC assigns priority to packets as shown in the following table.

Table 29 Automatic Traffic Classifier Priorities

PACKET SIZE (BYTES)	ATC PRIORITY
1 ~ 250	ATC_High
250 ~ 1100	ATC_Medium
1100 +	ATC_Low

You should activate ATC on the ZyXEL Device if your wireless network includes networking devices that do not support WMM QoS, or if you want to prioritize traffic but do not want to configure WMM QoS settings.

8.3.3 ATC+WMM

The ZyXEL Device can use a mapping mechanism to use both ATC and WMM QoS. The ATC+WMM function prioritizes all packets transmitted onto the wireless network using WMM QoS, and prioritizes all packets transmitted onto the wired network using ATC. See [Section 10.2.2 on page 143](#) for details of how to configure ATC+WMM.

Use the ATC+WMM function if you want to do the following:

- enable WMM QoS on your wireless network and automatically assign a WMM priority to packets that do not already have one (see [Section 8.3.3.1 on page 108](#)).
- automatically prioritize all packets going from your wireless network to the wired network (see [Section 8.3.3.2 on page 109](#)).

8.3.3.1 ATC+WMM from LAN to WLAN

ATC+WMM from LAN (the wired Local Area Network) to WLAN (the Wireless Local Area Network) allows WMM prioritization of packets that do not already have WMM QoS priorities assigned. The ZyXEL Device automatically classifies data packets using ATC and then assigns WMM priorities based on that ATC classification.

The following table shows how priorities are assigned for packets coming from the LAN to the WLAN.

Table 30 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (LAN to WLAN)

PACKET SIZE (BYTES)	→	ATC VALUE	→	WMM VALUE
1 ~ 250		ATC_High		WMM_VIDEO
250 ~ 1100		ATC_Medium		WMM_BEST_EFFORT
1100 +		ATC_Low		WMM_BACKGROUND

8.3.3.2 ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN

ATC+WMM from WLAN to LAN automatically prioritizes (assigns an ATC value to) all packets coming from the WLAN. Packets are assigned an ATC value based on their WMM value, not their size.

The following table shows how priorities are assigned for packets coming from the WLAN to the LAN when using ATC+WMM.

Table 31 ATC + WMM Priority Assignment (WLAN to LAN)

WMM VALUE	→	ATC VALUE
WMM_VOICE		ATC_High
WMM_VIDEO		ATC_High
WMM_BEST_EFFORT		ATC_Medium
WMM_BACKGROUND		ATC_Low
NONE		ATC_Medium

8.3.4 Type Of Service (ToS)

Network traffic can be classified by setting the ToS (Type Of Service) values at the data source (for example, at the ZyXEL Device) so a server can decide the best method of delivery, that is the least cost, fastest route and so on.

8.3.4.1 DiffServ

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

8.3.4.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

Figure 62 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

8.3.5 ToS (Type of Service) and WMM QoS

The DSCP value of outgoing packets is between 0 and 255. 0 is the default priority. WMM QoS checks the DSCP value in the header of data packets. It gives the traffic a priority according to this number.

In order to control which priority level is given to traffic, the device sending the traffic must set the DSCP value in the header. If the DSCP value is not specified, then the traffic is treated as best-effort. This means the wireless clients and the devices with which they are communicating must both set the DSCP value in order to make the best use of WMM QoS. A Voice over IP (VoIP) device for example may allow you to define the DSCP value.

The following table lists which WMM QoS priority level the ZyXEL Device uses for specific DSCP values.

Table 32 ToS and IEEE 802.1d to WMM QoS Priority Level Mapping

DSCP VALUE	WMM QOS PRIORITY LEVEL
224, 192	voice
160, 128	video
96, 0 ^A	besteffort
64, 32	background

A. The ZyXEL Device also uses best effort for any DSCP value for which another WMM QoS priority is not specified (255, 158 or 37 for example).

8.4 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other STP-compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network.

8.4.1 Rapid STP

The ZyXEL Device uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allow faster convergence of the spanning tree (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). Using RSTP topology change information does not have to propagate to the root bridge and unwanted learned addresses are flushed from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

8.4.2 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree; it is the bridge with the lowest identifier value (MAC address).

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see the following table.

Table 33 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this bridge has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

8.4.3 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware bridges exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

8.4.4 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states (see next table) to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 34 STP Port States

PORT STATES	DESCRIPTIONS
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

8.5 DFS

When you choose **802.11a** in **Access Point** mode (NWA-3160 only), the ZyXEL Device uses DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) to give you a wider choice of wireless channels.

DFS allows you to use channels in the frequency range normally reserved for radar systems. Radar uses radio signals to detect the location of objects for military, meteorological or air traffic control purposes. As long as your ZyXEL Device detects no radar activity on the channel you select, you can use the channel to communicate. However, a wireless LAN operating on the same frequency as an active radar system could disrupt the radar system. Therefore, if the ZyXEL Device detects radar activity on the channel you select, it automatically instructs the wireless clients to move to another channel, then resumes communications on the new channel.

8.6 Wireless Screen Overview

The following is a list of the wireless screens you can configure on the ZyXEL Device.

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
----------	------	----------	--------	-------------------	------------

- 1 Configure the ZyXEL Device to operate in AP, Bridge/Repeater, AP+Bridge or MBSSID mode in the **Wireless** screen (Bridge/Repeater and AP+Bridge modes are available on the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only). You can also select an **SSID Profile** in the **Wireless** screen.
- 2 Use the **SSID** screens to view and edit SSID profiles.
- 3 Use the **Security** screen to configure wireless profiles.
- 4 Use the **RADIUS** screen to configure RADIUS authentication and accounting settings.
- 5 Use the **Layer-2 Isolation** screen to prevent wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.
- 6 Use the **MAC Filter** screen to allow or restrict access to your wireless network based on a client's MAC address.

8.7 Configuring Wireless Settings

Click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The screen varies depending upon the operating mode you select.

8.7.1 Access Point Mode: NWA-3160 and NWA-3163

This section describes the **Access Point** mode screen for the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163. For the NWA-3165, see [Section 8.7.2 on page 114](#).

Select **Access Point** as the **Operating Mode** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 63 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163)

The screenshot shows the 'Wireless' configuration page. At the top are tabs: Wireless, SSID, Security, RADIUS, Layer 2 Isolation, and MAC Filter. The 'Wireless' tab is selected. The main area contains several settings: 'Operating Mode' is set to 'Access Point'; '802.11 Mode' is set to '802.11b+g'; 'Super Mode' is checked; 'Choose Channel ID' is set to 'Channel-06 2437MHz' with a 'Scan' button; 'RTS/CTS Threshold' is 2346; 'Fragmentation Threshold' is 2346; 'Output Power' is 100%; 'SSID Profile' is 'Guest2'; 'Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)' is checked; and 'Enable Roaming' is unchecked. At the bottom are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

Table 35 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select Access Point from the drop-down list.
802.11 Mode	Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced. Select 802.11a (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box. Click MAINTENANCE and then the Channel Usage tab to open the Channel Usage screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Scan instead.
Scan	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device automatically scan for and select the channel with the least interference.

Table 35 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to its smallest value (256) turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100%(Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
SSID Profile	<p>The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Select an SSID Profile from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>Configure SSID profiles in the SSID screen (see Section 10.2 on page 142 for information on configuring SSID).</p> <p>Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.</p>
Enable Spanning Tree Control (STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP - compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network. Select this to activate STP on the ZyXEL Device.
Enable Roaming	<p>Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet.</p> <p>Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.7.2 Access Point Mode: NWA-3165

This section describes the **Access Point** mode screen for the NWA-3165. For the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163, see [Section 8.7.1 on page 113](#).

Select **Access Point** as the **Operating Mode** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 64 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3165)

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Operating Mode			Access Point		
802.11 Mode			802.11n/g		
Channel Width			20/40MHz		
Channel ID			Channel-06 2437MHz		
Short GI			Enable		
A-MPDU Aggregation			Enable		
RTS/CTS Threshold			2346 (256 ~ 2346)		
Fragmentation Threshold			2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)		
Output Power			100%		
SSID Profile			SSID03		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Breathing LED <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Roaming					
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>					

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

Table 36 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3165)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select Access Point from the drop-down list.
802.11 Mode	Select 802.11b/g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced. Select 802.11n/g to allow both IEEE802.11n and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.
Channel Width	This field is available only when 802.11n/g is selected as the 802.11 Mode . Select whether the ZyXEL Device uses a wireless channel bandwidth of 20 or 40 MHz. A standard 20MHz channel offers transfer speeds of up to 150Mbps whereas a 40MHz channel uses two standard channels and offers speeds of up to 300Mbps. However, not all devices support 40MHz channels. Select 20MHz to use regular 20MHz channels, or select 20/40 MHz to allow the ZyXEL Device to adjust the channel bandwidth depending on network conditions.
Channel ID	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box.
Short GI	This field is available only when 802.11n/g is selected as the 802.11 Mode . Select Enable to use the Short GI (Guard Interval). The guard interval is the gap introduced between data transmission from users in order to reduce interference. Reducing the GI increases data transfer rates but also increases interference. Increasing the GI reduces data transfer rates but also reduces interference.
A-MPDU Aggregation	This field is available only when 802.11n/g is selected as the 802.11 Mode . Select Enable to allow the grouping of several A-MSDUs (Aggregate MAC Service Data Units) into one large A-MPDU (Aggregate MAC Protocol Data Unit). This function allows faster data transfer rates.
RTS/CTS Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS (Request To Send / Clear To Send) handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to its smallest value (256) turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.

Table 36 Wireless: Access Point (NWA-3165)

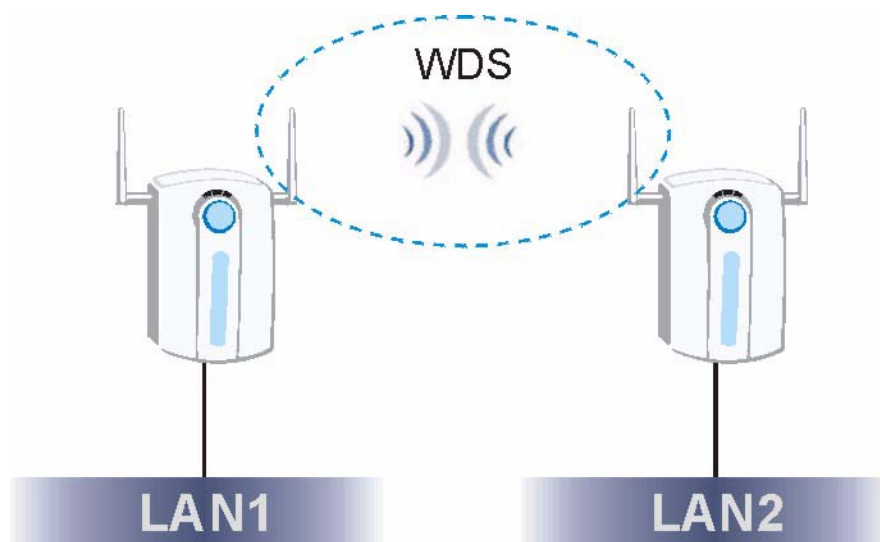
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100%(Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
SSID Profile	<p>The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Select an SSID Profile from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>Configure SSID profiles in the SSID screen (see Section 10.2 on page 142 for information on configuring SSID).</p> <p>Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.</p>
Enable Breathing LED	Select this box to disable the WLAN LED (light). Clear this box to enable the WLAN LED.
Enable Roaming	<p>Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet.</p> <p>Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.7.3 Bridge/Repeater Mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

The ZyXEL Device can act as a wireless network bridge and establish wireless links with other APs. You need to know the MAC address of the peer device, which also must be in bridge mode.

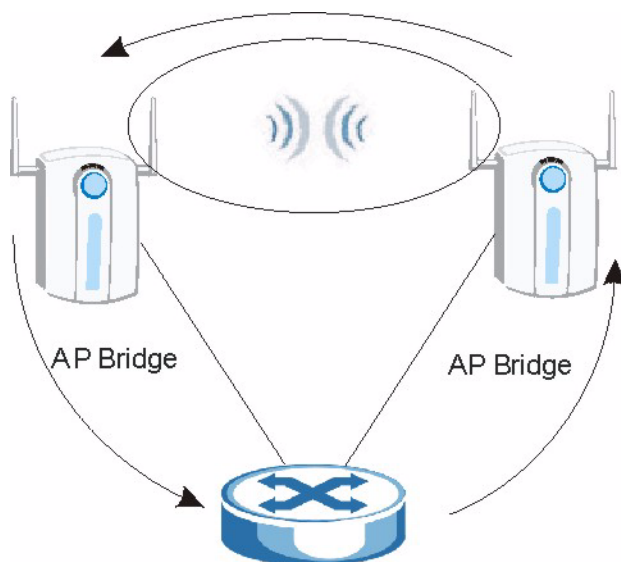
The ZyXEL Device can establish up to five wireless links with other APs.

In the example below, when both ZyXEL Devices are in Bridge/Repeater mode, they form a WDS (Wireless Distribution System) allowing the computers in LAN 1 to connect to the computers in LAN 2.

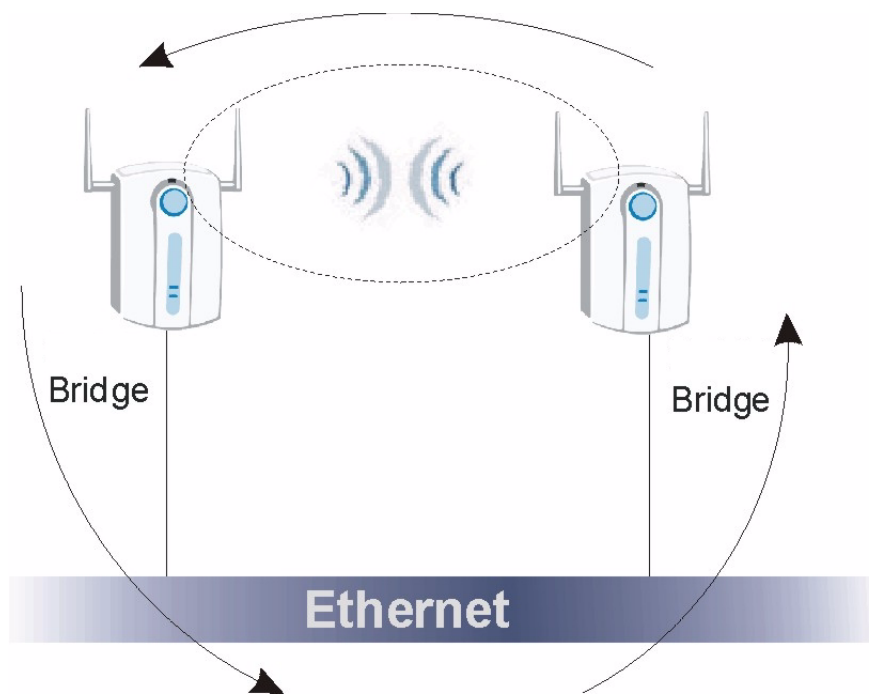
Figure 65 Bridging Example

Be careful to avoid bridge loops when you enable bridging in the ZyXEL Device. Bridge loops cause broadcast traffic to circle the network endlessly, resulting in possible throughput degradation and disruption of communications. The following examples show two network topologies that can lead to this problem:

- If two or more ZyXEL Devices (in bridge mode) are connected to the same hub.

Figure 66 Bridge Loop: Two Bridges Connected to Hub

- If your ZyXEL Device (in bridge mode) is connected to a wired LAN while communicating with another wireless bridge that is also connected to the same wired LAN.

Figure 67 Bridge Loop: Bridge Connected to Wired LAN

To prevent bridge loops, ensure that you enable STP in the **Wireless** screen or your ZyXEL Device is not set to bridge mode while connected to both wired and wireless segments of the same LAN.

To have the ZyXEL Device act as a wireless bridge only, click **WIRELESS > Wireless** and select **Bridge/Repeater** as the **Operating Mode**.

Figure 68 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

Wireless

Operating Mode: Bridge/Repeater

802.11 Mode: 802.11b+g

Choose Channel ID: Channel-06 2437MHz

RTS/CTS Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346)

Fragmentation Threshold: 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)

Output Power: 100%

☒ Enable WDS Security

☒ TKIP (ZyAIR Series Compatible)

☐ AES

Index	Active	Remote Bridge MAC	PSK
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11:22:33:44:55:66	55ACE678
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	

☒ Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

Apply Reset

The following table describes the bridge labels in this screen.

Table 37 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Operating Mode	Select Bridge/Repeater in this field.
802.11 mode	<p>Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced.</p> <p>Select 802.11a (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p>
Choose Channel ID	<p>Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region.</p> <p>To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only: click MAINTENANCE and then the Channel Usage tab to open the Channel Usage screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network.</p> <p>To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Scan instead.</p>
RTS/CTS Threshold	(Request To Send) The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to zero turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346 .
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the ZyXEL Device to reduce interference with other APs. Select from 100% (Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% and Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Enable WDS Security	<p>Select this to turn on security for the ZyXEL Device's Wireless Distribution System (WDS). A Wireless Distribution System is a wireless connection between two or more APs. If you do not select the check box, traffic between APs is not encrypted.</p> <p>Note: WDS security is independent of the security settings between the ZyXEL Device and any wireless clients.</p> <p>When you enable WDS security, also do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select the type of security you want to use (TKIP or AES) to secure traffic on your WDS. • Enter a pre-shared key in the PSK field for each access point in your WDS. Each access point can use a different pre-shared key. • Configure WDS security and the relevant PSK in each of your other access point(s). <p>Note: Other APs must use the same encryption method to enable WDS security.</p>

Table 37 Wireless: Bridge/Repeater (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
TKIP (ZyAIR Series Compatible)	<p>Select this to enable Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) security on your WDS. This option is compatible with other ZyXEL access points including that support WDS security. Use this if the other access points on your network support WDS security but do not have an AES option.</p> <p>Note: Check your other AP's documentation to make sure it supports WDS security.</p> <p>Note: At the time of writing, this option is compatible with other ZyXEL NWA Series and G-3000/G-3000H access points only.</p>
AES	<p>Select this to enable Advanced Encryption System (AES) security on your WDS. AES provides superior security to TKIP. Use AES if the other access points on your network support it for the WDS.</p> <p>Note: At the time of writing, this option is compatible with other ZyXEL NWA-3160 access points only.</p>
#	This is the index number of the bridge connection.
Active	Select the check box to enable the bridge connection. Otherwise, clear the check box to disable it.
Remote Bridge MAC Address	Type the MAC address of the peer device in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc.
PSK	Type a pre-shared key (PSK) from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols). You must also set the peer device to use the same pre-shared key. Each peer device can use a different pre-shared key.

See [Table 35 on page 113](#) for information on the other labels in this screen.

8.7.4 AP+Bridge Mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

Select **AP+Bridge** as the **Operating Mode** in the **WIRELESS > Wireless** screen to have the ZyXEL Device function as a bridge and access point simultaneously. See the section on applications for more information.

Figure 69 Wireless: AP+Bridge

Wireless

SSID

Security

RADIUS

Layer-2 Isolation

MAC Filter

Operating Mode

AP+Bridge

802.11 Mode

802.11b+g

☒ Super Mode

Choose Channel ID

Channel-06 2437MHz

RTS/CTS Threshold

2346

(256 ~ 2346)

Fragmentation Threshold

2346

(256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)

Output Power

100%

SSID Profile

Guest2

☐ Enable WDS Security

☒ TKIP (ZyAIR Series Compatible)

☒ AES

Index	Active	Remote Bridge MAC	PSK
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:00:00:00:00	

☒ Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

☐ Enable Roaming

Apply

Reset

See the tables describing the fields in the **Access Point** and **Bridge/Repeater** operating modes for descriptions of the fields in this screen.

8.7.5 MBSSID Mode

Select **MBSSID** as the **Operating Mode**. Refer to [Chapter 10 on page 139](#) for configuration instructions and detailed information. See [Chapter 9 on page 123](#) for details on the security settings.

Wireless Security Configuration

This chapter describes how to use the **Security** and **RADIUS** screens to configure wireless security on your ZyXEL Device.

9.1 Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless stations, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the ZyXEL Device are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by MAC address and hiding the ZyXEL Device's identity.

9.1.1 Encryption

- Use WPA(2) security if you have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients. WPA(2) uses either an external RADIUS server or the internal authentication server. WPA has user authentication and improved data encryption over WEP.
- Use WPA(2)-PSK if you have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients but no RADIUS server, or do not want to use the internal authentication server.
- If you don't have WPA(2)-aware wireless clients, then use WEP key encrypting. A higher bit key offers better security. You can manually enter 64-bit, 128-bit or 152-bit WEP keys.

9.1.2 Restricted Access

The **MAC Filter** screen allows you to configure the AP to give exclusive access to devices (**Allow Association**) or exclude them from accessing the AP (**Deny Association**).

9.1.3 Hide Identity

If you hide the SSID, then the ZyXEL Device cannot be seen when a wireless client scans for local APs. The trade-off for the extra security of "hiding" the ZyXEL Device may be inconvenience for some valid WLAN clients.

9.1.4 WEP Encryption

WEP encryption scrambles the data transmitted between the wireless stations and the access points to keep network communications private. It encrypts unicast and multicast communications in a network. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key.

Your ZyXEL Device allows you to configure up to four 64-bit, 128-bit or 152-bit WEP keys but only one key can be enabled at any one time.

9.2 802.1x Overview

The IEEE 802.1x standard outlines enhanced security methods for both the authentication of wireless stations and encryption key management. Authentication can be done using a RADIUS server.

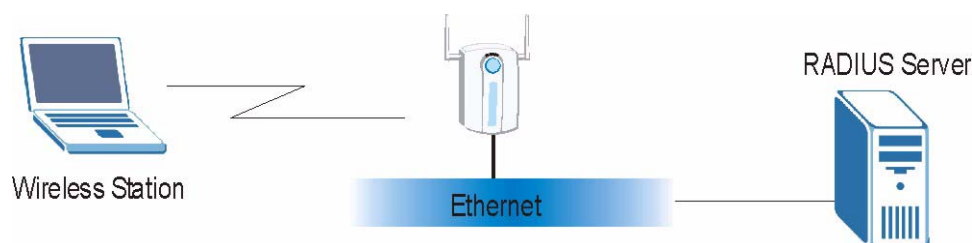
9.3 EAP Authentication Overview

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, the access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server or the AP. The ZyXEL Device supports EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, EAP-MD5 and PEAP with RADIUS. Refer to the Types of EAP Authentication appendix for descriptions on the common types.

The following figure shows an overview of authentication when you specify a RADIUS server on your access point.

Figure 70 EAP Authentication



The details below provide a general description of how IEEE 802.1x EAP authentication works. For an example list of EAP-MD5 authentication steps, see the IEEE 802.1x appendix.

- 1 The wireless station sends a “start” message to the ZyXEL Device.
- 2 The ZyXEL Device sends a “request identity” message to the wireless station for identity information.
- 3 The wireless station replies with identity information, including username and password.
- 4 The RADIUS server checks the user information against its user profile database and determines whether or not to authenticate the wireless station.

9.4 Introduction to WPA

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. Key differences between WPA and WEP are user authentication and improved data encryption.

9.4.1 User Authentication

WPA applies IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using a RADIUS database. See later in this chapter and the appendices for more information on IEEE 802.1x, RADIUS, EAP and PEAP.

If you don't have a RADIUS server you should use WPA-PSK (WPA -Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a client will be granted access to a WLAN.

9.4.2 Encryption

WPA improves data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x.

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. It includes a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

TKIP regularly changes and rotates the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice. The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), TKIP makes it much more difficult to decode data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP, making it difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA and WPA-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs an easier-to-use, consistent, single, alphanumeric password.

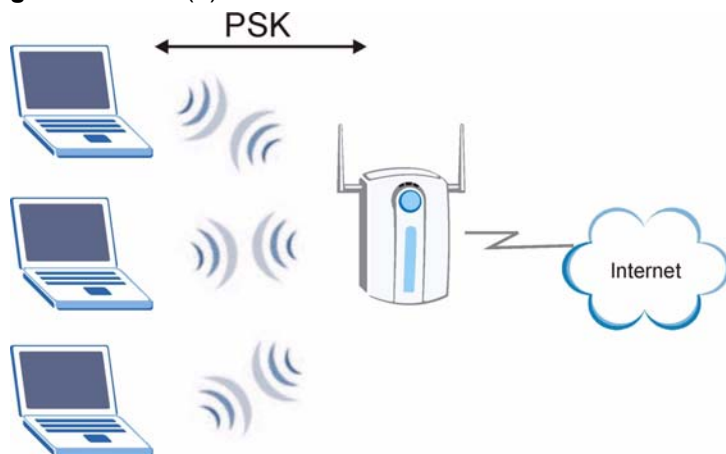
9.4.3 WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and allows it to join the network only if the password matches.

- 3 The AP derives and distributes key information to the wireless clients. The key itself is not sent over the network, but is derived from the PSK and information exchanged between the AP and the client.
- 4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process to encrypt data exchanged between them.

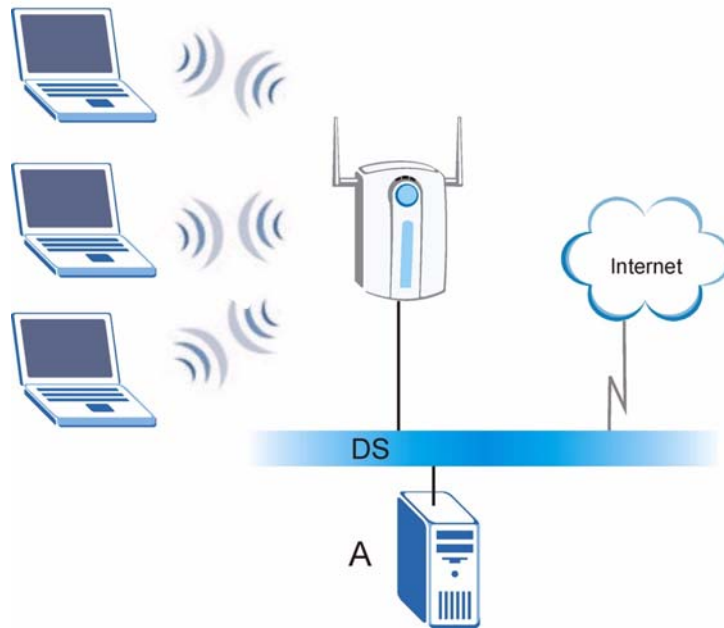
Figure 71 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



9.5 WPA(2) with External RADIUS Application Example

You need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. “A” is the RADIUS server. “DS” is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client’s authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- 3 The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

Figure 72 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

9.6 Security Modes

The following table describes the security modes you can configure.

Table 38 Security Modes

SECURITY MODE	DESCRIPTION
None	Select this to have no data encryption.
WEP	Select this to use WEP encryption.
802.1x-Only	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with no data encryption.
802.1x-Static64	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with a static 64bit WEP key and an authentication server.
802.1x-Static128	Select this to use 802.1x authentication with a static 128bit WEP key and an authentication server.
WPA	Select this to use WPA.
WPA-PSK	Select this to use WPA with a pre-shared key.
WPA2	Select this to use WPA2.
WPA2-MIX	Select this to use either WPA2 or WPA depending on which security mode the wireless client uses.
WPA2-PSK	Select this to use WPA2 with a pre-shared key.
WPA2-PSK-MIX	Select this to use either WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK, depending on which security mode the wireless client uses.

9.7 Wireless Client WPA Supplicants


A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client, and Meetinghouse Data Communications' AEGIS client.

The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

9.8 Wireless Security Effectiveness

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your ZyXEL Device. EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is used for authentication and utilizes static WEP key exchange. It requires interaction with a RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) server either on the WAN or your LAN to provide authentication service for wireless stations.

Table 39 Wireless Security Levels

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least Secure  Most Secure	Unique SSID (Default)
	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
	WPA2

If you do not enable any wireless security on your ZyXEL Device, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device within range.

9.9 Configuring Security



The following screens are configurable only in Access Point, AP+Bridge and MBSSID operating modes only.

Use the Security screen to create secure profiles. A security profile is a group of configuration settings which can be assigned to an SSID profile in the **SSID** configuration screen.

You can configure up to 16 security profiles.

To change your ZyXEL Device's wireless security settings, click **WIRELESS > Security**.

Figure 73 Wireless > Security

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																																																																				
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Security Mode</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>security01</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>security02</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>security03</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>security04</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>5</td><td>security05</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>6</td><td>security06</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>7</td><td>security07</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>8</td><td>security08</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>9</td><td>security09</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>10</td><td>security10</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>11</td><td>security11</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>12</td><td>security12</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>13</td><td>security13</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>14</td><td>security14</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>15</td><td>security15</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>16</td><td>security16</td><td>None</td></tr> </tbody> </table>							Index	Profile Name	Security Mode		1	security01	None		2	security02	None		3	security03	None		4	security04	None		5	security05	None		6	security06	None		7	security07	None		8	security08	None		9	security09	None		10	security10	None		11	security11	None		12	security12	None		13	security13	None		14	security14	None		15	security15	None		16	security16	None
	Index	Profile Name	Security Mode																																																																						
	1	security01	None																																																																						
	2	security02	None																																																																						
	3	security03	None																																																																						
	4	security04	None																																																																						
	5	security05	None																																																																						
	6	security06	None																																																																						
	7	security07	None																																																																						
	8	security08	None																																																																						
	9	security09	None																																																																						
	10	security10	None																																																																						
	11	security11	None																																																																						
	12	security12	None																																																																						
	13	security13	None																																																																						
	14	security14	None																																																																						
	15	security15	None																																																																						
	16	security16	None																																																																						
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>																																																																									

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 WIRELESS > Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the security profile.
Profile Name	This field displays a name given to a security profile in the Security configuration screen.
Security Mode	This field displays the security mode this security profile uses.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click Edit to configure security settings for that profile.

The next screen varies according to the **Security Mode** you select.

9.9.1 Security: WEP

Select **WEP** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.



If you use WEP in IEEE 802.11n/g mode (NWA-3165 only) the data rate will not exceed 54Mbps. To attain a faster data rate, use a different security type, such as WPA(2) or WPA(2)-PSK.

Figure 74 WIRELESS > Security: WEP

Wireless **SSID** **Security** **RADIUS** **Layer-2 Isolation** **MAC Filter**

Name : security02

Security Mode : WEP

WEP Encryption : 64-bit WEP

Authentication Method : Auto

64-bit WEP: Enter 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
 128-bit WEP: Enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
 152-bit WEP: Enter 16 ASCII characters or 32 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).

☒ ASCII ☐ Hex

☒ Key 1

☐ Key 2

☐ Key 3

☐ Key 4

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Security: WEP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WEP in this field.
WEP Encryption	Select Disable to allow wireless stations to communicate with the access points without any data encryption. Select 64-bit WEP , 128-bit WEP or 152-bit WEP to enable data encryption.
Authentication Method	Select Auto , Open System or Shared Key from the drop-down list box. The default setting is Auto .
ASCII	Select this option to enter ASCII characters as the WEP keys.
Hex	Select this option to enter hexadecimal characters as the WEP keys. The preceding "0x" is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4	The WEP keys are used to encrypt data. Both the ZyXEL Device and the wireless stations must use the same WEP key for data transmission. If you chose 64-bit WEP , then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose 128-bit WEP , then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). If you chose 152-bit WEP , then enter 16 ASCII characters or 32 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F"). You must configure all four keys, but only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.9.2 Security: 802.1x Only

Select **802.1x-Only** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 75 Security: 802.1x Only

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p>Security Mode : <input type="text" value="8021x-Only"/></p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p>					
<p align="center"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 42 Security: 802.1x Only

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose 802.1x Only in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.</p> <p>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the user name and password again before access to the wired network is allowed.</p> <p>The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.9.3 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

Select **802.1x Static 64** or **802.1x Static 128** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 76 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Profile Name : <input type="text" value="security04"/></p> <p>Security Mode : <input type="text" value="8021x-Static128"/></p> <p>Enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> ASCII <input type="radio"/> Hex</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1 <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 2 <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 3 <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 4 <input type="text"/></p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p><input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/></p>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Security: 802.1x Static 64-bit, 802.1x Static 128-bit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose 802.1x Static 64 or 802.1x Static 128 in this field.
ASCII	Select this option to enter ASCII characters as the WEP keys.
Hex	Select this option to enter hexadecimal characters as the WEP keys.The preceding "0x" is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4	<p>If you chose 802.1x Static 64, then enter any 5 characters (ASCII string) or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") preceded by 0x for each key.</p> <p>If you chose 802.1x Static 128-bit, then enter 13 characters (ASCII string) or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") preceded by 0x for each key.</p> <p>There are four data encryption keys to secure your data from eavesdropping by unauthorized wireless users. The values for the keys must be set up exactly the same on the access points as they are on the wireless stations.</p> <p>The preceding "0x" is entered automatically. You must configure all four keys, but only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.</p>
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.</p> <p>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the user name and password again before access to the wired network is allowed.</p> <p>The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.9.4 Security: WPA

Select **WPA** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 77 Security: WPA

The screenshot shows a configuration interface for WPA security. It features a tabbed menu at the top with 'Security' selected. Below the tabs, there are several configuration fields: 'Name' with the value 'security02', 'Security Mode' set to 'WPA', and three timer fields: 'ReAuthentication Timer' (1800), 'Idle Timeout' (3600), and 'Group Key Update Timer' (1800). Each timer field includes a descriptive note in parentheses. At the bottom of the form are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Security: WPA

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WPA in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend user names and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off. Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the user name and password again before access to the wired network is allowed. The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.9.5 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

Select **WPA2** or **WPA2-MIX** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 78 Security:WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<p>Name : <input type="text" value="security02"/></p> <p>Security Mode : <input type="text" value="WPA2-MIX"/></p> <p>ReAuthentication Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds, 0 mean no ReAuthentication)</p> <p>Idle Timeout : <input type="text" value="3600"/> (in seconds)</p> <p>Group Key Update Timer : <input type="text" value="1800"/> (in seconds)</p> <p>PMK Cache : <input type="text" value="Enable"/></p> <p>Pre-Authentication : <input type="text" value="Disable"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/> </p>					

The following table describes the labels not previously discussed

Table 45 Security: WPA2 or WPA2-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTIONS
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WPA2 or WPA2-MIX in this field.
ReAuthentication Timer	<p>Specify how often wireless stations have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected.</p> <p>Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off.</p> <p>Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.</p>
Idle Timeout	<p>The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the username and password again before access to the wired network is allowed.</p> <p>The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).</p>
Group Key Update Timer	<p>The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device's default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).</p>
PMK Cache	<p>When a wireless client moves from one AP's coverage area to another, it performs an authentication procedure (exchanging security information) with the new AP. Instead of re-authenticating a client each time it returns to the AP's coverage area, which can cause delays to time-sensitive applications, the AP and the client can store (or "cache") and use information about their previous authentication. Select Enable to allow PMK caching, or Disable to switch this feature off.</p>
Pre-Authentication	<p>Pre-authentication allows a wireless client to perform authentication with a different AP from the one to which it is currently connected, before moving into the new AP's coverage area. This speeds up roaming. Select Enable to allow pre-authentication, or Disable to switch it off.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.9.6 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK-MIX

Select **WPA-PSK**, **WPA2-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK-MIX** in the **Security Mode** field to display the following screen.

Figure 79 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX

The following table describes the labels not previously discussed

Table 46 Security: WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Type a name to identify this security profile.
Security Mode	Choose WPA-PSK , WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK-MIX in this field.
Pre-Shared Key	The encryption mechanisms used for WPA and WPA-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters (including spaces and symbols).
ReAuthentication Timer	Specify how often wireless stations have to resend usernames and passwords in order to stay connected. Enter a time interval between 10 and 9999 seconds. The default time interval is 1800 seconds (30 minutes). Alternatively, enter "0" to turn reauthentication off. Note: If wireless station authentication is done using a RADIUS server, the reauthentication timer on the RADIUS server has priority.
Idle Timeout	The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a wireless station from the wired network after a period of inactivity. The wireless station needs to enter the username and password again before access to the wired network is allowed. The default time interval is 3600 seconds (or 1 hour).
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients. The re-keying process is the WPA equivalent of automatically changing the group key for an AP and all stations in a WLAN on a periodic basis. Setting of the Group Key Update Timer is also supported in WPA-PSK mode. The ZyXEL Device's default is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.10 Introduction to RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication and accounting, where the access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks, among others:

- Authentication
Determines the identity of the users.
- Accounting
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

The ZyXEL Device is equipped with an internal RADIUS server. See [Section 15.1 on page 177](#) for more details.

9.11 Configuring RADIUS

Use RADIUS if you want to authenticate wireless users using the internal authentication server (see [Section 15.1 on page 177](#)) or an external server.

You can configure up to four RADIUS server profiles. Each profile also has one backup authentication server and a backup accounting server. These profiles can be assigned to an SSID profile in the **SSID** configuration screen

To set up your ZyXEL Device's RADIUS server settings, click **WIRELESS > RADIUS**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 80 RADIUS

	Primary	Backup
RADIUS Option	<input type="radio"/> Internal <input checked="" type="radio"/> External	<input type="radio"/> Internal <input checked="" type="radio"/> External
	<input type="checkbox"/> Active	<input type="checkbox"/> Active
RADIUS Server IP Address	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0
RADIUS Server Port	1812	1812
Share Secret		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Active	<input type="checkbox"/> Active
Accounting Server IP Address	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0
Accounting Server Port	1813	1813
Share Secret		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 47 RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	Select the RADIUS profile you want to configure from the drop-down list box.
Profile Name	Type a name for the RADIUS profile associated with the Index number above.
Primary	Configure the fields below to set up user authentication and accounting.

Table 47 RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup	If the ZyXEL Device cannot communicate with the Primary accounting server, you can have the ZyXEL Device use a Backup RADIUS server. Make sure the Active check boxes are selected if you want to use backup servers. The ZyXEL Device will attempt to communicate three times before using the Backup servers. Requests can be issued from the client interface to use the backup server. The length of time for each authentication is decided by the wireless client or based on the configuration of the ReAuthentication Timer field in the Security screen.
RADIUS Option	
Internal	Select this check box to use the ZyXEL Device's internal authentication server. The Active , RADIUS Server IP Address , RADIUS Server Port and Share Secret fields are not available when you use the internal authentication server.
External	Select this check box to use an external authentication server. The ZyXEL Device does not use the internal authentication server when this check box is enabled.
Active	Select the check box to enable user authentication through an external authentication server. This check box is not available when you select Internal .
RADIUS Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external authentication server in dotted decimal notation. This field is not available when you select Internal .
RADIUS Server Port	Enter the port number of the external authentication server. The default port number is 1812. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so. This field is not available when you select Internal .
Share Secret	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external authentication server and the ZyXEL Device. The key must be the same on the external authentication server and your ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network. This field is not available when you select Internal .
Active	Select the check box to enable user accounting through an external authentication server.
Accounting Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
Accounting Server Port	Enter the port number of the external accounting server. The default port number is 1813. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so with additional information.
Share Secret	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external accounting server and the ZyXEL Device. The key must be the same on the external accounting server and your ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

MBSSID and SSID

This chapter describes how to configure and use your ZyXEL Device's MBSSID mode and configure SSID profiles.

10.1 Wireless LAN Infrastructures

See the Wireless LAN chapter for some basic WLAN scenarios and terminology.

10.1.1 MBSSID

Traditionally, you needed to use different APs to configure different Basic Service Sets (BSSs). As well as the cost of buying extra APs, there was also the possibility of channel interference. The ZyXEL Device's MBSSID (Multiple Basic Service Set Identifier) function allows you to use one access point to provide several BSSs simultaneously. You can then assign varying levels of privilege to different SSIDs.

Wireless stations can use different BSSIDs to associate with the same AP.

10.1.2 Notes on Multiple BSS

- There is a maximum number of BSSs allowed on one AP simultaneously.
On the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163, a maximum of eight simultaneous BSSs are allowed.
On the NWA-3165, a maximum of four simultaneous BSSs are allowed.
- You must use different WEP keys for different BSSs. If two stations have different BSSIDs (they are in different BSSs), but have the same WEP keys, they may hear each other's communications (but not communicate with each other).
- MBSSID should not replace but rather be used in conjunction with 802.1x security.

10.1.3 Multiple BSS Example

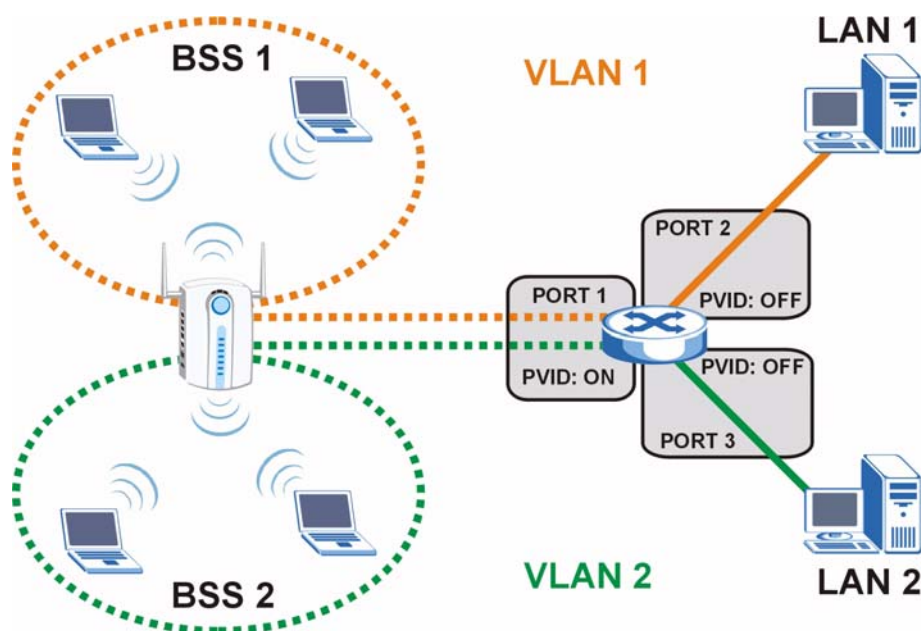
Refer to the applications section for more information.

10.1.4 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example

In this example, VLAN 1 includes the computers in BSS1 and LAN 1. Computers in BSS2 and LAN 2 belong to VLAN 2. Users in BSS1 are limited to accessing the resources on LAN 1 and similarly users in BSS2 may only access resources on LAN 2. VLAN 2 is the management VLAN.

The switch adds PVID (Port VLAN Identity) tags to incoming frames that don't already have tags (on switch ports where PVID is enabled).

Figure 81 Multiple BSS with VLAN Example



10.1.5 Configuring Multiple BSSs

Click **WIRELESS > Wireless** and select **MBSSID** in the **Operating Mode** drop-down list box to display the screen as shown.

Figure 82 Wireless: Multiple BSS

Wireless			SSID			Security			RADIUS			Layer-2 Isolation			MAC Filter		
Operating Mode MBSSID																	
802.11 Mode 802.11b+g																	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Super Mode																	
Choose Channel ID Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan																	
RTS/CTS Threshold 2346 (256 ~ 2346)																	
Fragmentation Threshold 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)																	
Output Power 100%																	
Select SSID Profile																	
Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile												
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2												
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2												
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest2	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2												
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Guest2												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Roaming																	
<div>Apply</div> <div>Reset</div>																	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Wireless: Multiple BSS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Operating Mode	Select MBSSID in this field to display the screen as shown
802.11 Mode	<p>Select 802.11b Only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select 802.11g Only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>Select 802.11b+g to allow both IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device. The transmission rate of your ZyXEL Device might be reduced.</p> <p>Select 802.11a (NWA-3160 only) to allow only IEEE 802.11a compliant WLAN devices to associate with the ZyXEL Device.</p>
Super Mode	Select this to improve data throughput on the WLAN by enabling fast frame and packet bursting.
Choose Channel ID	<p>Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region. To manually set the ZyXEL Device to use a channel, select a channel from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only: click MAINTENANCE and then the Channel Usage tab to open the Channel Usage screen to make sure the channel is not already used by another AP or independent peer-to-peer wireless network. To have the ZyXEL Device automatically select a channel, click Scan instead.</p>
Scan	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device automatically select the wireless channel with the lowest interference.
RTS/CTS Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for enabling RTS/CTS handshake. Data with a frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to be larger than the maximum MSDU (MAC service data unit) size turns off the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting this attribute to its lowest value (256) turns on the RTS/CTS handshake. Enter a value between 256 and 2346.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number between 256 and 2346 .
Output Power	Set the output power of the ZyXEL Device in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100%(Full Power) , 50% , 25% , 12.5% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your ZyXEL Device's output power.
Select SSID Profile	<p>An SSID profile is the set of parameters relating to one of the ZyXEL Device's BSSs. The SSID (Service Set Identifier) identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating with the access point (AP) must have the same SSID.</p> <p>Note: If you are configuring the ZyXEL Device from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the ZyXEL Device's SSID or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press Apply to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the ZyXEL Device's new settings.</p>
Index	Select the check box to activate an SSID profile.

Table 48 Wireless: Multiple BSS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile	Select the profile(s) of the SSIDs you want to use in your wireless network. You can have up to eight BSSs running on the ZyXEL Device simultaneously, one of which is always the pre-configured VoIP_SSID profile and another of which is always the pre-configured Guest_SSID profile. Configure SSID profiles in the SSID screen.
Enable Spanning Tree Control (STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP - compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network. Select the check box to activate STP on the ZyXEL Device.
Roaming Active	Roaming allows wireless stations to switch from one access point to another as they move from one coverage area to another. Select this checkbox to enable roaming on the ZyXEL Device if you have two or more ZyXEL Devices on the same subnet. Note: All APs on the same subnet and the wireless stations must have the same SSID to allow roaming.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

10.2 SSID

When the ZyXEL Device is set to Access Point, AP+Bridge (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only) or MBSSID mode, you need to choose the SSID profile(s) you want to use in your wireless network (see [Section 8.6 on page 112](#) for more information on operating modes).

Use the **WIRELESS > SSID** screen to see information about the SSID profiles on the ZyXEL Device, and use the **WIRELESS > SSID > Edit** screen to configure the SSID profiles.

10.2.1 The SSID Screen

Click **WIRELESS > SSID** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 83 SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter			
	Index	Profile Name	SSID	Security	RADIUS	QoS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	security01	radius01	VoIP	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	security01	radius01	NONE	Isolation01	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable
<input type="radio"/>	16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	security01	radius01	NONE	Disable	Disable

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of each SSID profile.
Profile Name	This field displays the identification name of each SSID profile on the ZyXEL Device.
SSID	This field displays the name of the wireless profile on the network. When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Security	This field indicates which security profile is currently associated with each SSID profile. See Section 9.9 on page 128 for more information.
RADIUS	This field displays which RADIUS profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, if you have a RADIUS server configured.
QoS	This field displays the Quality of Service setting for this profile or NONE if QoS is not configured on a profile.
Layer 2 Isolation	This field displays which layer 2 isolation profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, or Disable if Layer 2 Isolation is not configured on an SSID profile.
MAC Filter	This field displays which MAC filter profile is currently associated with each SSID profile, or Disable if MAC filtering is not configured on an SSID profile.
Edit	Click the radio button next to the profile you want to configure and click Edit to go to the SSID configuration screen.

10.2.2 Configuring SSID

Each SSID profile references the settings configured in the following screens:

- **WIRELESS > Security** (one of the security profiles).
- **WIRELESS > RADIUS** (one of the RADIUS profiles).
- **WIRELESS > MAC Filter** (the MAC filter list, if activated in the SSID profile).
- **WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation** (the layer 2 isolation list, if activated in the SSID profile).
- Also, use the **VLAN** screen to set up wireless VLANs based on SSID.

Configure the fields in the above screens to use the settings in an SSID profile.

Select an SSID profile in the **WIRELESS > SSID** screen and click **Edit** to display the following screen.

Figure 84 Configuring SSID

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Profile Name		SSID04			
SSID		TA_PoM			
Hide Name(SSID)		Disable			
Security		security01			
RADIUS		radius01			
QoS		NONE			
Layer-2 Isolation		Disable			
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking		Disable			
MAC Filtering		Disable			
		Apply		Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Configuring SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a name identifying this profile.
SSID	When a wireless client scans for an AP to associate with, this is the name that is broadcast and seen in the wireless client utility.
Hide Name (SSID)	Select Disable if you want the ZyXEL Device to broadcast this SSID (a wireless client scanning for an AP will find this SSID). Alternatively, select Enable to have the ZyXEL Device hide this SSID (a wireless client scanning for an AP will not find this SSID).
Security	Select a security profile to use with this SSID profile. See Section 9.9 on page 128 for more information.
RADIUS	Select a RADIUS profile from the drop-down list box, if you have a RADIUS server configured. If you do not need to use RADIUS authentication, ignore this field. See Section 9.11 on page 136 for more information.

Table 50 Configuring SSID

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
QoS	<p>Select the Quality of Service priority for this BSS's traffic.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the pre-configured VoIP_SSID profile, the QoS setting is VoIP. This is not user-configurable. The VoIP setting is available only on the VoIP_SSID profile, and provides the highest level of QoS. If you select WMM from the QoS list, the priority of a data packet depends on the packet's IEEE 802.1q or DSCP header. See Section 8.3.1 on page 107 for more information on WMM and WMM priorities. If a packet has no WMM value assigned to it, it is assigned the default priority. If you select ATC from the QoS list, the ZyXEL Device automatically assigns priority based on packet size. See Section 8.3.2 on page 107 for more information on ATC. If you select ATC+WMM from the QoS list, the ZyXEL Device uses WMM on the wireless network and ATC on the wired network. See Section 8.3.3 on page 108 for more information on ATC+WMM. If you select WMM_VOICE, WMM_VIDEO, WMM_BEST_EFFORT or WMM_BACKGROUND, the ZyXEL Device applies that QoS setting to all of that SSID's traffic. If you select NONE, the ZyXEL Device applies no priority to traffic on this SSID. <p>Note: When you configure an SSID profile's QoS settings, the ZyXEL Device applies the same QoS setting to all of the profile's traffic.</p>
Layer-2 Isolation	<p>Select a layer 2 isolation profile from the drop-down list box. If you do not want to use layer 2 isolation on this profile, select Disable. See Section 11.1 on page 147 for more information.</p>
Intra-BSS Traffic blocking	<p>Select Enable from the drop-down list box to prevent wireless clients in this profile's BSS from communicating with one another.</p>
MAC Filtering	<p>Select a MAC filter profile from the drop-down list box. If you do not want to use MAC filtering on this profile, select Disable. See Section 11.4 on page 152 for more information.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes.</p>
Reset	<p>Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

Other Wireless Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure the **Layer-2 Isolation** and **MAC Filter** screens on your ZyXEL Device.

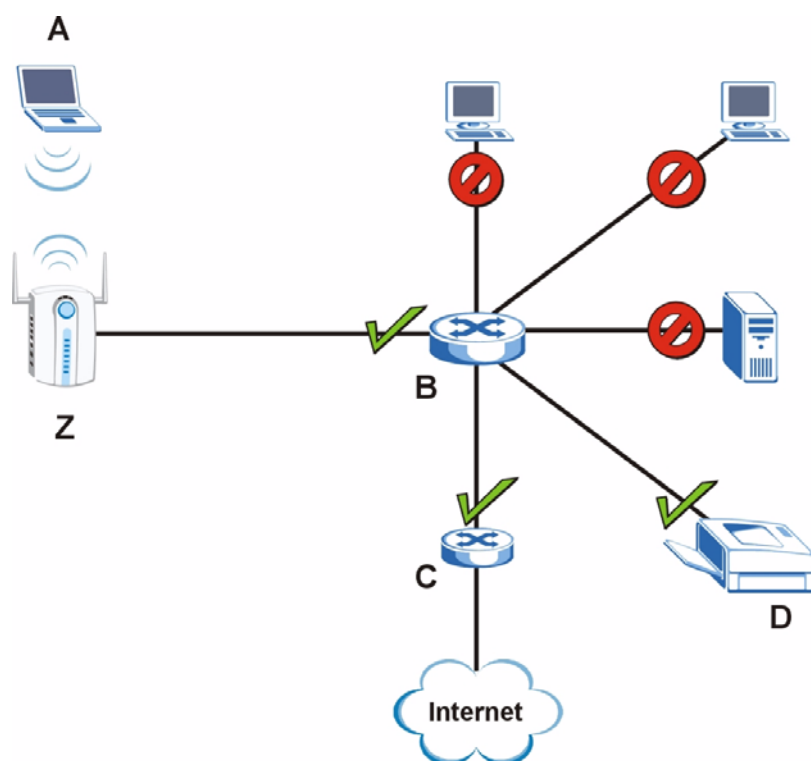
11.1 Layer-2 Isolation Introduction

Layer-2 isolation is used to prevent wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.

In the following example, layer-2 isolation is enabled on the ZyXEL Device (**Z**, in the figure) to allow a guest wireless client (**A**) to access the main network router (**B**). The router provides access to the Internet (**C**) and the network printer (**D**) while preventing the client from accessing other computers and servers on the network. The client can communicate with other wireless clients only if **Intra-BSS Traffic blocking** is disabled.



Intra-BSS Traffic Blocking is activated when you enable layer-2 isolation.

Figure 85 Layer-2 Isolation Application

MAC addresses that are not listed in the **Allow devices with these MAC addresses** table are blocked from communicating with the ZyXEL Device's wireless clients except for broadcast packets. Layer-2 isolation does not check the traffic between wireless clients that are associated with the same AP. Intra-BSS Traffic allows wireless clients associated with the same AP to communicate with each other.

11.2 The Layer-2 Isolation Screen

Click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation**. The screen appears as shown next.

Figure 86 WIRELESS > Layer 2 Isolation

Index	Profile Name
1	l2isolation01
2	l2isolation02
3	Guest_Iso
4	l2isolation04
5	l2isolation05
6	l2isolation06
7	l2isolation07
8	l2isolation08
9	l2isolation09
10	l2isolation10
11	l2isolation11
12	l2isolation12
13	l2isolation13
14	l2isolation14
15	l2isolation15
16	l2isolation16

Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the profile.
Profile Name	This field displays the name given to a layer-2 isolation profile in the Layer-2 Isolation Configuration screen.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click Edit to configure settings for that profile.

11.3 Configuring Layer-2 Isolation

To configure layer-2 isolation, click **WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation > Edit**. The screen appears as shown.



If layer-2 isolation is enabled, you need to know the MAC address of each wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow to communicate with the ZyXEL Device's wireless clients.

Figure 87 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration Screen

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Profile Name		l2isolation01			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:00:00:00:00		17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	00:00:00:00:00:00		21	00:00:00:00:00:00	
6	00:00:00:00:00:00		22	00:00:00:00:00:00	
7	00:00:00:00:00:00		23	00:00:00:00:00:00	
8	00:00:00:00:00:00		24	00:00:00:00:00:00	
9	00:00:00:00:00:00		25	00:00:00:00:00:00	
10	00:00:00:00:00:00		26	00:00:00:00:00:00	
11	00:00:00:00:00:00		27	00:00:00:00:00:00	
12	00:00:00:00:00:00		28	00:00:00:00:00:00	
13	00:00:00:00:00:00		29	00:00:00:00:00:00	
14	00:00:00:00:00:00		30	00:00:00:00:00:00	
15	00:00:00:00:00:00		31	00:00:00:00:00:00	
16	00:00:00:00:00:00		32	00:00:00:00:00:00	
Apply			Reset		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 WIRELESS > Layer-2 Isolation Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Type a name to identify this layer-2 isolation profile.
Allow devices with these MAC addresses	These are the MAC address of a wireless client, AP, computer or router. A wireless client associated with the ZyXEL Device can communicate with another wireless client, AP, computer or router only if the MAC addresses of those devices are listed in this table.
Set	This is the index number of the MAC address.
MAC Address	Type the MAC addresses of the wireless client, AP, computer or router that you want to allow the associated wireless clients to have access to in these address fields. Type the MAC address in a valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs, for example 12:34:56:78:9a:bc).
Description	Type a name to identify this device.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

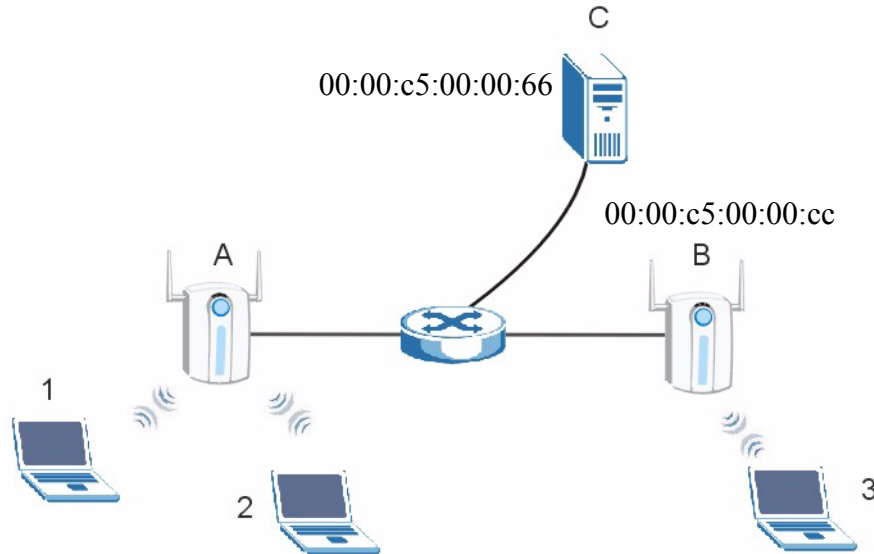
11.3.1 Layer-2 Isolation Examples

The following section shows you example layer-2 isolation configurations on the ZyXEL Device (A).



When configuring, remember to select the correct layer-2 isolation profile in the WIRELESS > SSID > Edit screen of the relevant SSID profile.

Figure 88 Layer-2 Isolation Example Configuration



11.3.1.1 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1

In the following example wireless clients **1** and **2** can communicate with file server **C**, but not access point **B** or wireless client **3**.

- Enter **C**'s MAC address in the **MAC Address** field, and enter "File Server C" in the **Description** field.

Figure 89 Layer-2 Isolation Example 1

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Profile Name		l2isolation01			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	File Server C	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	

11.3.1.2 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2

In the following example wireless clients **1** and **2** can communicate with access point **B** and file server **C** but not wireless client **3**.

- Enter the server's and your ZyXEL Device's MAC addresses in the **MAC Address** fields. Enter "File Server C" in **C**'s **Description** field, and enter "Access Point B" in **B**'s **Description** field.

Figure 90 Layer-2 Isolation Example 2

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter
Layer-2 Isolation Configuration					
Profile Name		l2isolation01			
Allow devices with these MAC addresses					
Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:c5:00:00:66	File Server C	17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:c5:00:00:cc	Access Point B	18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	

11.4 The MAC Filter Screen

The MAC filter function allows you to configure the ZyXEL Device to give exclusive access to devices (Allow Association) or exclude devices from accessing the ZyXEL Device (Deny Association).

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC address of each device to configure MAC filtering on the ZyXEL Device.

The MAC filter profile is a user-configured list of MAC addresses. Each SSID profile can reference one MAC filter profile. The ZyXEL Device provides 16 MAC Filter profiles, each of which can hold up to 32 MAC addresses.

Click WIRELESS > MAC Filter. The screen displays as shown.

Figure 91 WIRELESS > MAC Filter

Wireless	SSID	Security	RADIUS	Layer-2 Isolation	MAC Filter																																																																				
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Index</th> <th>Profile Name</th> <th>Filter Action</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>macfilter01</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>macfilter02</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>macfilter03</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>macfilter04</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>5</td><td>macfilter05</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>6</td><td>macfilter06</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>7</td><td>macfilter07</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>8</td><td>macfilter08</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>9</td><td>macfilter09</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>10</td><td>macfilter10</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>11</td><td>macfilter11</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>12</td><td>macfilter12</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>13</td><td>macfilter13</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>14</td><td>macfilter14</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>15</td><td>macfilter15</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>16</td><td>macfilter16</td><td>Deny Association</td></tr> </tbody> </table>							Index	Profile Name	Filter Action		1	macfilter01	Deny Association		2	macfilter02	Deny Association		3	macfilter03	Deny Association		4	macfilter04	Deny Association		5	macfilter05	Deny Association		6	macfilter06	Deny Association		7	macfilter07	Deny Association		8	macfilter08	Deny Association		9	macfilter09	Deny Association		10	macfilter10	Deny Association		11	macfilter11	Deny Association		12	macfilter12	Deny Association		13	macfilter13	Deny Association		14	macfilter14	Deny Association		15	macfilter15	Deny Association		16	macfilter16	Deny Association
	Index	Profile Name	Filter Action																																																																						
	1	macfilter01	Deny Association																																																																						
	2	macfilter02	Deny Association																																																																						
	3	macfilter03	Deny Association																																																																						
	4	macfilter04	Deny Association																																																																						
	5	macfilter05	Deny Association																																																																						
	6	macfilter06	Deny Association																																																																						
	7	macfilter07	Deny Association																																																																						
	8	macfilter08	Deny Association																																																																						
	9	macfilter09	Deny Association																																																																						
	10	macfilter10	Deny Association																																																																						
	11	macfilter11	Deny Association																																																																						
	12	macfilter12	Deny Association																																																																						
	13	macfilter13	Deny Association																																																																						
	14	macfilter14	Deny Association																																																																						
	15	macfilter15	Deny Association																																																																						
	16	macfilter16	Deny Association																																																																						
<input type="button" value="Edit"/>																																																																									

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 WIRELESS > MAC Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the profile.
Profile Name	This field displays the name given to a MAC filter profile in the MAC Filter Configuration screen.
Edit	Select an entry from the list and click Edit to configure settings for that profile.

11.4.1 Configuring MAC Filtering

To change your ZyXEL Device's MAC filter settings, click **WIRELESS > MAC Filter > Edit**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 92 MAC Address Filter

Wireless SSID Security RADIUS Layer-2 Isolation **MAC Filter**

MAC Address Filter

Profile Name:

Filter Action:

Set	MAC Address	Description	Set	MAC Address	Description
1	00:00:00:00:00:00		17	00:00:00:00:00:00	
2	00:00:00:00:00:00		18	00:00:00:00:00:00	
3	00:00:00:00:00:00		19	00:00:00:00:00:00	
4	00:00:00:00:00:00		20	00:00:00:00:00:00	
5	00:00:00:00:00:00		21	00:00:00:00:00:00	
6	00:00:00:00:00:00		22	00:00:00:00:00:00	
7	00:00:00:00:00:00		23	00:00:00:00:00:00	
8	00:00:00:00:00:00		24	00:00:00:00:00:00	
9	00:00:00:00:00:00		25	00:00:00:00:00:00	
10	00:00:00:00:00:00		26	00:00:00:00:00:00	
11	00:00:00:00:00:00		27	00:00:00:00:00:00	
12	00:00:00:00:00:00		28	00:00:00:00:00:00	
13	00:00:00:00:00:00		29	00:00:00:00:00:00	
14	00:00:00:00:00:00		30	00:00:00:00:00:00	
15	00:00:00:00:00:00		31	00:00:00:00:00:00	
16	00:00:00:00:00:00		32	00:00:00:00:00:00	

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 MAC Address Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Type a name to identify this profile.
Filter Action	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the MAC address filter table. Select Deny Association to block access to the router. MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the router. Select Allow Association to permit access to the router. MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the router.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC addresses (in XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX format) of the wireless station to be allowed or denied access to the ZyXEL Device.
Description	Type a name to identify this wireless station.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.



To activate MAC filtering on an SSID profile, select the correct filter from the Enable MAC Filtering drop-down list box in the WIRELESS > SSID > Edit screen and click Apply.

11.5 Configuring Roaming

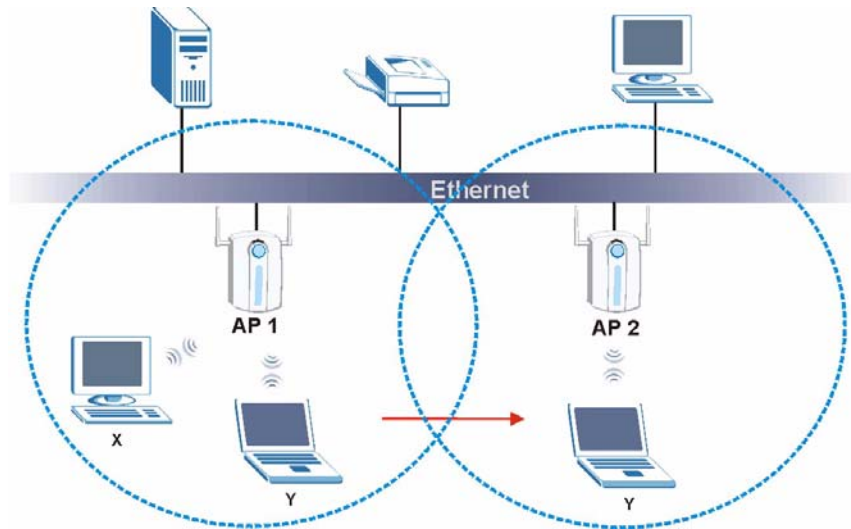
A wireless station is a device with an IEEE 802.11a/b/g compliant wireless interface. An access point (AP) acts as a bridge between the wireless and wired networks. An AP creates its own wireless coverage area. A wireless station can associate with a particular access point only if it is within the access point's coverage area.

In a network environment with multiple access points, wireless stations are able to switch from one access point to another as they move between the coverage areas. This is known as roaming. As the wireless station moves from place to place, it is responsible for choosing the most appropriate access point depending on the signal strength, network utilization or other factors.

The roaming feature on the access points allows the access points to relay information about the wireless stations to each other. When a wireless station moves from a coverage area to another, it scans and uses the channel of a new access point, which then informs the other access points on the LAN about the change. An example is shown in [Figure 93 on page 155](#).

With roaming, a wireless LAN mobile user enjoys a continuous connection to the wired network through an access point while moving around the wireless LAN.

Enable roaming to exchange the latest bridge information of all wireless stations between APs when a wireless station moves between coverage areas. Wireless stations can still associate with other APs even if you disable roaming. Enabling roaming ensures correct traffic forwarding (bridge tables are updated) and maximum AP efficiency. The AP deletes records of wireless stations that associate with other APs (Non-ZyXEL APs may not be able to perform this). 802.1x authentication information is not exchanged (at the time of writing).

Figure 93 Roaming Example

The steps below describe the roaming process.

- 1 Wireless station **Y** moves from the coverage area of access point **AP 1** to that of access point **AP 2**.
- 2 Wireless station **Y** scans and detects the signal of access point **AP 2**.
- 3 Wireless station **Y** sends an association request to access point **AP 2**.
- 4 Access point **AP 2** acknowledges the presence of wireless station **Y** and relays this information to access point **AP 1** through the wired LAN.
- 5 Access point **AP 1** updates the new position of wireless station **Y**.

11.5.1 Requirements for Roaming

The following requirements must be met in order for wireless stations to roam between the coverage areas.

- 1 All the access points must be on the same subnet and configured with the same ESSID.
- 2 If IEEE 802.1x user authentication is enabled and to be done locally on the access point, the new access point must have the user profile for the wireless station.
- 3 The adjacent access points should use different radio channels when their coverage areas overlap.
- 4 All access points must use the same port number to relay roaming information.
- 5 The access points must be connected to the Ethernet and be able to get IP addresses from a DHCP server if using dynamic IP address assignment.

To enable roaming on your ZyXEL Device, click **WIRELESS > Wireless**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 94 Roaming

Wireless SSID Security RADIUS Layer-2 Isolation MAC Filter

Operating Mode MBSSID

802.11 Mode 802.11b+g

☐ Super Mode

Choose Channel ID Channel-06 2437MHz or Scan

RTS/CTS Threshold 2346 (256 ~ 2346)

Fragmentation Threshold 2346 (256 ~ 2346) (Fragmentation threshold shall be an even number)

Output Power 100%

Select SSID Profile

Index	Active	Profile	Index	Active	Profile
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VoIP_SSID	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID05
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest_SSID	6	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID06
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Guest2	7	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID07
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSID04	8	<input type="checkbox"/>	SSID08

☒ Enable Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

☒ Enable Roaming

Apply Reset

Select the **Roaming Active** check box and click **Apply**.

IP Screen

This chapter discusses how to configure IP settings on the ZyXEL Device.

12.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults

The Ethernet parameters of the ZyXEL Device are preset in the factory with the following values:

- 1 IP address of 192.168.1.2
- 2 Subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (24 bits)

These parameters should work for the majority of installations.

12.2 TCP/IP Parameters

12.2.1 WAN IP Address Assignment

Every computer on the Internet must have a unique IP address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (only between your two branch offices, for instance) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks.

Table 55 Private IP Address Ranges

10.0.0.0	-	10.255.255.255
172.16.0.0	-	172.31.255.255
192.168.0.0	-	192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or have it assigned by a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.



Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, Address Allocation for Private Internets and RFC 1466, Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space.

12.3 Configuring IP Settings

Click **IP** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 95 IP Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address Assignment	
Get automatically from DHCP	Select this option if your ZyXEL Device is using a dynamically assigned IP address from a DHCP server each time. Note: You must know the IP address assigned to the ZyXEL Device (by the DHCP server) to access the ZyXEL Device again.
Use fixed IP address	Select this option if your ZyXEL Device is using a static IP address. When you select this option, fill in the fields below.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation. Note: If you change the ZyXEL Device's IP address, you must use the new IP address if you want to access the web configurator again.
IP Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.
Gateway IP Address	Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your ZyXEL Device that will forward the packet to the destination. On the LAN, the gateway must be a router on the same segment as your ZyXEL Device; over the WAN, the gateway must be the IP address of one of the remote nodes.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Rogue AP

This chapter discusses rogue wireless access points (APs) and how to configure the ZyXEL Device's rogue AP detection feature.



Rogue AP detection features are available on the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only.

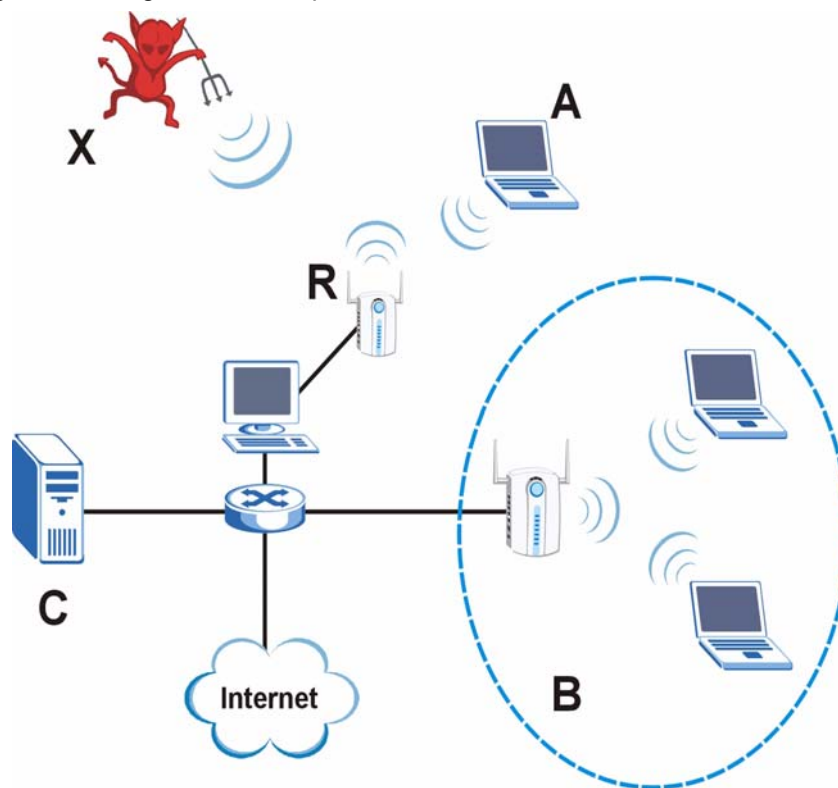
13.1 Rogue AP Introduction

A rogue AP is a wireless access point operating in a network's coverage area that is not a sanctioned part of that network. Rogue APs are not under the control of the network's administrators, and can open up holes in a network's security. Attackers can take advantage of a rogue AP's weaker (or non-existent) security to gain access to the network, or set up their own rogue APs in order to capture information from wireless clients. If a scan reveals a rogue AP, you can use commercially-available software to physically locate it.

Note that it is not necessary for a network to have a legitimate wireless LAN component for rogue APs to open the network to an attacker. In this case, any AP detected can be classified as rogue.

13.2 Rogue AP Examples

In the following example, a corporate network's security is compromised by a rogue AP (**R**) set up by an employee at his workstation in order to allow him to connect his notebook computer wirelessly (**A**). The company's legitimate wireless network (the dashed ellipse **B**) is well-secured, but the rogue AP uses inferior security that is easily broken by an attacker (**X**) running readily available encryption-cracking software. In this example, the attacker now has access to the company network, including sensitive data stored on the file server (**C**).

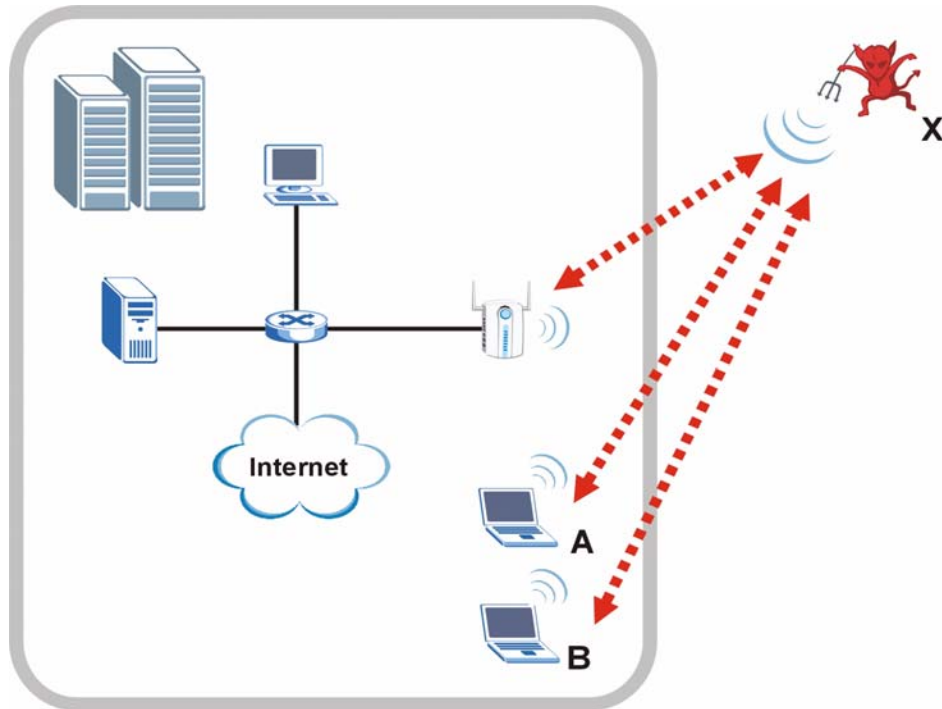
Figure 96 Rogue AP: Example

13.2.1 “Honeypot” Attack

Rogue APs need not be connected to the legitimate network to pose a severe security threat. In the following example, an attacker (**X**) is stationed in a vehicle outside a company building, using a rogue access point equipped with a powerful antenna. By mimicking a legitimate (company network) AP, the attacker tries to capture usernames, passwords, and other sensitive information from unsuspecting clients (**A** and **B**) who attempt to connect. This is known as a “honeypot” attack.

If a rogue AP in this scenario has sufficient power and is broadcasting the correct SSID (Service Set Identifier) clients have no way of knowing that they are not associating with a legitimate company AP. The attacker can forward network traffic from associated clients to a legitimate AP, creating the impression of normal service. This is a variety of “man-in-the-middle” attack.

This scenario can also be part of a wireless denial of service (DoS) attack, in which associated wireless clients are deprived of network access. Other opportunities for the attacker include the introduction of malware (malicious software) into the network.

Figure 97 “Honeypot” Attack

13.3 Configuring Rogue AP Detection (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

You can configure the ZyXEL Device to detect rogue IEEE 802.11a (5 GHz - NWA-3160 only) and IEEE 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) APs.



Rogue AP detection is not available on the NWA-3165.

If you have more than one AP in your wireless network, you must also configure the list of “friendly” APs. Friendly APs are the other wireless access points in your network, as well as any others that you know are not a threat (those from neighboring networks, for example). It is recommended that you export (save) your list of friendly APs often, especially if you have a network with a large number of access points.

You can choose to scan for rogue APs manually, or to have the ZyXEL Device scan automatically at pre-defined intervals.

You can also set the ZyXEL Device to email you immediately when a rogue AP is detected (see [Chapter 17 on page 201](#) for information on how to set up email logs).

13.3.1 Rogue AP: Configuration

Click **ROGUE AP > Configuration**. The following screen appears.

Figure 98 ROGUE AP > Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 ROGUE AP > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Rogue AP Period Detection	Select Yes to turn rogue AP detection on. You must also enter a time value in the Period field. Select No to turn rogue AP detection off.
Period (minutes)	Enter the period you want the ZyXEL Device to wait between scanning for rogue APs (between 10 and 60 minutes). You must also select Yes in the Active Rogue AP Period Detection field.
Friendly AP List	
Export	Click this button to save the current list of friendly APs' MAC addresses and descriptions (as displayed in the ROGUE AP > Friendly AP screen) to your computer.
File Path	Enter the location of a previously-saved friendly AP list to upload to the ZyXEL Device. Alternatively, click the Browse button to locate a list.
Browse	Click this button to locate a previously-saved list of friendly APs to upload to the ZyXEL Device.
Import	Click this button to upload the previously-saved list of friendly APs displayed in the File Path field to the ZyXEL Device.
Apply	Click Apply to save your settings.
Reset	Click Reset to return all fields in this screen to their previously-saved values.

13.3.2 Rogue AP: Friendly AP

The friendly AP list displays details of all the access points in your area that you know are not a threat. If you have more than one AP in your network, you need to configure this list to include your other APs. If your wireless network overlaps with that of a neighbor (for example) you should also add these APs to the list, as they do not compromise your own network's security. If you do not add them to the friendly AP list, these access points will appear in the **Rogue AP** list each time the ZyXEL Device scans.

Figure 99 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP

Add Friendly AP						
MAC Address		Description				
<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>			<input type="button" value="Add"/>	

Friendly AP List						
#	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description	
1	00:a0:00:00:00:00	0_01	2	WPA	First floor lobby	
2	00:00:a0:00:00:00	0_02	2	WPA	Second Floor Design	
3	00:00:00:00:00:03	1201	4	WPA	Coffee Shop WLAN	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 ROGUE AP > Friendly AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add Friendly AP	Use this section to manually add a wireless access point to the list. You must know the device's MAC address.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the AP you wish to add to the list.
Description	Enter a short, explanatory description identifying the AP with a maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters. Spaces, underscores (_) and dashes (-) are allowed.
Add	Click this button to include the AP in the list.
Friendly AP List	This is the list of safe wireless access points you have already configured.
#	This is the index number of the AP's entry in the list.
MAC Address	This field displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the AP. All wireless devices have a MAC address that uniquely identifies them.
SSID	This field displays the Service Set Identifier (also known as the network name) of the AP.
Channel	This field displays the wireless channel the AP is currently using.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless encryption the AP is currently using.
Description	This is the description you entered when adding the AP to the list.
Delete	Click this button to remove an AP's entry from the list.

13.3.3 Rogue AP List

This list displays details of all IEEE 802.11a (NWA-3160 only) and IEEE 802.11b/g/n wireless access points within the ZyXEL Device's coverage area, except for the ZyXEL Device itself and the access points included in the friendly AP list (see [Section 13.3.2 on page 162](#)).

You can set how often you want the ZyXEL Device to scan for rogue APs in the **ROGUE AP > Configuration** screen (see [Section 13.3.1 on page 162](#)).

Click **ROGUE AP > Rogue AP**. The following screen displays.

Figure 100 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP

Rogue AP List						
#	Active	MAC Address	SSID	Channel	Security	Description
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:08:02:00:07	3	2	WPAPSK	
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	00:01:00:20:90:DA	65	11	WPAPSK	

Buttons: Add To Friendly AP List, Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 ROGUE AP > Rogue AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rogue AP List	This displays details of access points in the ZyXEL Device's coverage area that are not listed in the friendly AP list (see Section 13.3.2 on page 162)
Refresh	Click this button to have the ZyXEL Device scan for rogue APs.
#	This is the index number of the AP's entry in the list.
Active	Use this check box to select the APs you want to move to the friendly AP list (see Section 13.3.2 on page 162)
MAC Address	This field displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the AP. All wireless devices have a MAC address that uniquely identifies them.
SSID	This field displays the Service Set Identifier (also known as the network name) of the AP.
Channel	This field displays the wireless channel the AP is currently using.
Security	This field displays the type of wireless encryption the AP is currently using.
Description	If you want to move the AP's entry to the friendly AP list, enter a short, explanatory description identifying the AP before you click Add to Friendly AP List . A maximum of 32 alphanumeric characters are allowed in this field. Spaces, underscores (_) and dashes (-) are allowed.
Add to Friendly AP List	If you know that the AP described in an entry is not a threat, select the Active check box, enter a short description in the Description field and click this button to add the entry to the friendly AP list (see Section 13.3.2 on page 162). When the ZyXEL Device next scans for rogue APs, the selected AP does not appear in the rogue AP list.
Reset	Click Reset to return all fields in this screen to their default values.

Remote Management Screens

This chapter provides information on the Remote Management screens.

14.1 Remote Management Overview

Remote management allows you to determine which services/protocols can access which of the ZyXEL Device's interfaces (if any) from which computers.

You may manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

Table 60 Remote Management Overview

- | | |
|------------|----------------------|
| • WLAN | • ALL (LAN and WLAN) |
| • LAN only | • Neither (Disable). |

To disable remote management of a service, select **Disable** in the corresponding **Server Access** field.

You may only have one remote management session running at a time. The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a remote management session of lower priority when another remote management session of higher priority starts. The priorities for the different types of remote management sessions are as follows.

- 1 Telnet
- 2 HTTP

14.1.1 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management over LAN or WLAN will not work when:

- 1 You have disabled that service in one of the remote management screens.
- 2 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 3 There is already another remote management session with an equal or higher priority running. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.

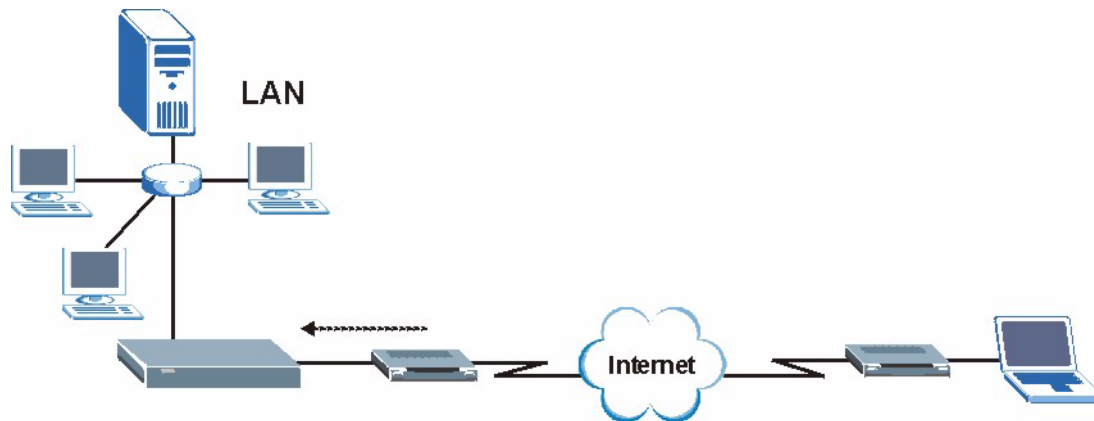
14.1.2 System Timeout

There is a default system management idle timeout of five minutes (three hundred seconds). The ZyXEL Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling. You can change the timeout period in the **System** screen

14.2 Configuring Telnet

You can configure your ZyXEL Device for remote Telnet access as shown next. The administrator uses Telnet from a computer on a remote network to access the ZyXEL Device.

Figure 101 Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network



Click the **REMOTE MGNT > TELNET**. The following screen displays.

Figure 102 Remote Management: Telnet

The screenshot shows the 'Remote Management: Telnet' configuration page. At the top, there are four tabs: TELNET, FTP, WWW, and SNMP. The TELNET tab is selected. Below the tabs, there are two main sections: TELNET and SSH. The TELNET section has three fields: 'Server Port' with a value of 23, 'Server Access' with a dropdown menu showing 'WLAN & LAN', and 'Secured Client IP Address' with radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Selected', followed by an input field with '0.0.0.0'. The SSH section has four fields: 'Server Certificate' with a dropdown menu showing 'auto_generated_self_signed_cert' and a link '(See My Certificates)', 'Server Port' with a value of 22, 'Server Access' with a dropdown menu showing 'WLAN & LAN', and 'Secured Client IP Address' with radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Selected', followed by an input field with '0.0.0.0'. At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Remote Management: Telnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TELNET	
Server Port	You can change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using Telnet.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a "trusted" computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.

Table 61 Remote Management: Telnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSH	
Server Certificate	Select the certificate whose corresponding private key is to be used to identify the ZyXEL Device for SSH connections. You must have certificates already configured in the Certificates > My Certificates screen.
Server Port	You can change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using SSH.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14.3 Configuring FTP

You can upload and download the ZyXEL Device’s firmware and configuration files using FTP, please see the chapter on firmware and configuration file maintenance for details. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

To change your ZyXEL Device’s FTP settings, click **REMOTE MGNT > FTP**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 103 Remote Management: FTP

The screenshot shows the 'FTP' configuration screen. At the top, there are four tabs: 'TELNET', 'FTP' (which is highlighted), 'WWW', and 'SNMP'. Below the tabs, the title 'FTP' is displayed. The main area contains three settings: 'Server Port' with a text box containing '21', 'Server Access' with a dropdown menu showing 'WLAN & LAN', and 'Secured Client IP Address' with two radio buttons, 'All' (which is selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text box containing '0.0.0.0'. At the bottom of the screen, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Remote Management: FTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.

Table 62 Remote Management: FTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14.4 Configuring WWW

To change your ZyXEL Device’s World Wide Web settings, click **REMOTE MGNT > WWW**.

Figure 104 Remote Management: WWW

The screenshot shows the 'WWW' configuration screen. It has a title bar 'WWW'. Below it, there are three rows of settings: 'Server Port' with a text box containing '80', 'Server Access' with a dropdown menu showing 'WLAN & LAN', and 'Secured Client IP Address' with radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text box containing '0.0.0.0'. Below this is a section titled 'HTTPS'. It starts with a 'Server Certificate' dropdown menu showing 'auto_generated_self_signed_cert' and a link '(See My Certificates)'. Below that is a checkbox 'Authenticate Client Certificates (See Trusted CAs)'. Then are 'Server Port' (443), 'Server Access' (WLAN & LAN), and 'Secured Client IP Address' (All/Selected/0.0.0.0). At the bottom are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Remote Management: WWW

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WWW	
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
HTTPS	

Table 63 Remote Management: WWW

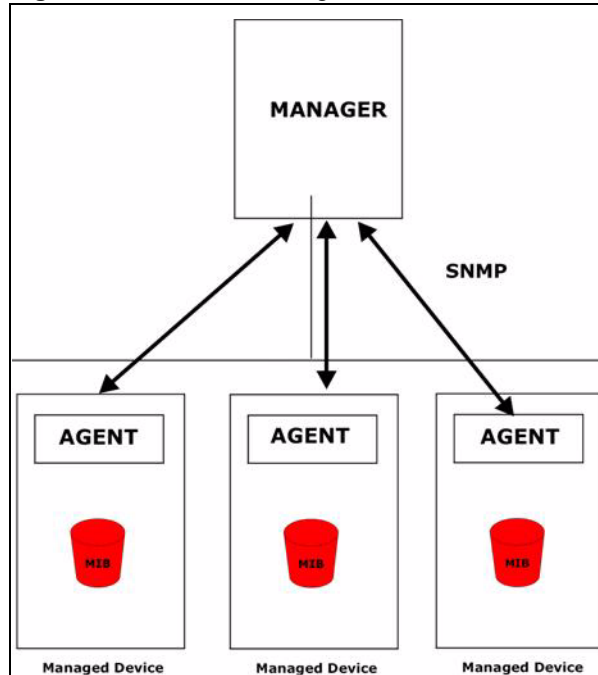
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Certificate	Select the Server Certificate that the ZyXEL Device will use to identify itself. The ZyXEL Device is the SSL server and must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the ZyXEL Device).
Authenticate Client Certificates	Select Authenticate Client Certificates (optional) to require the SSL client to authenticate itself with the ZyXEL Device by sending the ZyXEL Device a certificate. To do that the SSL client must have a CA-signed certificate from a CA that has been imported as a trusted CA on the ZyXEL Device (see the appendix on importing certificates for details).
Server Port	The HTTPS proxy server listens on port 443 by default. If you change the HTTPS proxy server port to a different number on the ZyXEL Device, for example 8443, then you must notify people who need to access the ZyXEL Device web configurator to use "https://ZyXEL Device IP Address: 8443 " as the URL.
Server Access	Select a ZyXEL Device interface from Server Access on which incoming HTTPS access is allowed. You can allow only secure web configurator access by setting the HTTP Server Access field to Disable and setting the HTTPS Server Access field to an interface(s).
Secured Client IP Address	A secure client is a "trusted" computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14.5 SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your ZyXEL Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the ZyXEL Device through the network. The ZyXEL Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1), and version two (SNMPv2c). The NWA-3165 alone also supports version 3 (SNMPv3), at the time of writing. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation.



SNMP is available only if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 105 SNMP Management Model

An SNMP managed network consists of two main types of component: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device (the ZyXEL Device). An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
- Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

14.5.1 Supported MIBs

The ZyXEL Device supports MIB II that is defined in RFC-1213 and RFC-1215 as well as the proprietary ZyXEL private MIB. The purpose of the MIBs is to let administrators collect statistical data and monitor status and performance.

14.5.2 SNMP Traps

The ZyXEL Device can send the following traps to the SNMP manager.

Table 64 SNMP Traps

TRAP NAME	OBJECT IDENTIFIER # (OID)	DESCRIPTION
Generic Traps		
coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent after booting (power on). This trap is defined in RFC-1215.
warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent after booting (software reboot). This trap is defined in RFC-1215.
linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
authenticationFailure (defined in <i>RFC-1215</i>)	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	The device sends this trap when it receives any SNMP get or set requirements with the wrong community (password). Note: snmpEnableAuthenTraps, OID 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.30 (defined in RFC 1214 and RFC 1907) must be enabled on in order for the device to send authenticationFailure traps. Use a MIB browser to enable or disable snmpEnableAuthenTraps.
Traps defined in the ZyXEL Private MIB.		
whyReboot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.13.0.1	This trap is sent with the reason for restarting before the system reboots (warm start). "System reboot by user!" is added for an intentional reboot (for example, download new files, CLI command "sys reboot"). If the system reboots because of fatal errors, a code for the error is listed.
pwTFTPStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.2.3.3.1	This trap is sent to indicate the status and result of a TFTP client session that has ended.

14.6 SNMP Trap Interface Index

Some traps include an SNMP interface index. The following table maps the SNMP interface indexes to the ZyXEL Device's physical and virtual ports.

Table 65 SNMP Interface Index to Physical and Virtual Port Mapping

TYPE	INTERFACE	PORT
Physical	enet0	Wireless LAN adaptor WLAN1
	enet1	Ethernet port (LAN)
	enet2	Wireless LAN adaptor WLAN2

Table 65 SNMP Interface Index to Physical and Virtual Port Mapping

TYPE	INTERFACE	PORT
Virtual	enet3 ~ enet9	WLAN1 in MBSSID mode
	enet10 ~ enet16	WLAN2 in MBSSID mode
	enet17 ~ enet21	WLAN1 in WDS mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)
	enet22 ~ enet26	WLAN2 in WDS mode (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)

14.6.1 SNMP v3 and Security

SNMP v3 enhances security for SNMP management. SNMP managers can be required to authenticate with agents before conducting SNMP management sessions.

Security can be further enhanced by encrypting the SNMP messages sent from the managers. Encryption protects the contents of the SNMP messages. When the contents of the SNMP messages are encrypted, only the intended recipients can read them.



At the time of writing, only the NWA-3165 supports SNMP v3.

14.6.2 Configuring SNMP

To change your ZyXEL Device's SNMP settings, click **REMOTE MGNT > SNMP**. The screen appears as shown.



Not all features are available in all models.

Figure 106 Remote Management: SNMP

TELNET FTP WWW **SNMP**

SNMP Configuration

Get Community

Set Community

Trap Destination

SNMP Version

Trap Community

User Profile

[Configure SNMPv3 User Profile](#)

SNMP

Service Port

Service Access

Secured Client IP Address ☒ All ☐ Selected

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 66 Remote Management: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SNMP Configuration	
Get Community	Enter the Get Community , which is the password for the incoming Get and GetNext requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests.
Set Community	Enter the Set Community , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station. The default is public and allows all requests.
Trap Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
SNMP Version	Select the SNMP version for the ZyXEL Device. The SNMP version on the ZyXEL Device must match the version on the SNMP manager. Choose SNMP version 1 (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2 (SNMPv2) or SNMP version 3 (SNMPv3 ; NWA-3165 only).
Trap Community	Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The default is "public" and allows all requests. This field is available only when SNMPv1 or SNMPv2 is selected in the SNMP Version field.
User Profile (NWA-3165 Only)	This field is available only when you select SNMPv3 in the SNMP Version field. When sending SNMP v3 traps (messages sent independently by the SNMP agent) the agent must authenticate the SNMP manager. If the SNMP manager does not provide the correct security details, the agent does not send the traps. The ZyXEL Device has two SNMP version 3 login accounts, User and Admin . Each account has different security settings. You can use either account's security settings for authenticating SNMP traps. Select User to have the ZyXEL Device use the User account's security settings, or select Admin to have the ZyXEL Device use the Admin account's security settings. Use the Configure SNNMPv3 User Profile link to set up each account's security settings.

Table 66 Remote Management: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configure SNMPv3 User Profile (NWA-3165 Only)	Click this to go to the SNMPv3 User Profile screen, where you can configure administration and user login details.
SNMP	
Service Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.
Service Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	A secured client is a “trusted” computer that is allowed to communicate with the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select All to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Choose Selected to just allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14.6.2.1 The SNMPv3 User Profile Screen (NWA-3165 Only)

Use this screen to set up the details of SNMPv3 users. Click **Configure SNMPv3 User Profile** in the **REMOTE MGNT > SNMP** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 107 Remote Management: SNMPv3 User Profile

The screenshot shows the 'SNMPv3Admin' and 'SNMPv3User' configuration sections. Both sections have a checked 'Enable' checkbox. The 'SNMPv3Admin' section includes fields for 'User Name' (SNMPv3Admin), 'Password', 'Confirm Password', 'Access Type' (Set), 'Authentication Protocol' (MD5), and 'Privacy Protocol' (None). The 'SNMPv3User' section includes fields for 'User Name' (SNMPv3User), 'Password', 'Confirm Password', 'Access Type' (Get), 'Authentication Protocol' (MD5), and 'Privacy Protocol' (None). At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 67 Remote Management: SNMP User Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable SNMPv3Admin	Select this box to activate the SNMPv3 administration account. The SNMPv3 administrator can issue Get and Set commands to the ZyXEL Device.
User Name	Enter a username for the SNMPv3 administrator. Only SNMP commands carrying this username are allowed to administer the ZyXEL Device.
Password	Enter a password for the SNMPv3 administrator. Only SNMP commands carrying this password are allowed to administer the ZyXEL Device.
Confirm Password	Re-enter the Password .
Access Type	For the administrator, this is always Set . SNMP Set commands allow the administrator to make configuration changes.
Authentication Protocol	Select an authentication algorithm. MD5 (Message Digest 5) and SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Privacy Protocol	Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication with this user. You can choose one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DES - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data. • AES - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data. • None - no encryption is used.
Enable SNMPv3User	Select this box to activate the SNMPv3 user account. The SNMPv3 user can issue GET commands to the ZyXEL Device.
User Name	Enter a username for the SNMPv3 user. Only SNMP commands carrying this username are allowed to get details about the ZyXEL Device.
Password	Enter a password for the SNMPv3 administrator. Only SNMP commands carrying this password are allowed to get details about the ZyXEL Device.
Confirm Password	Re-enter the Password .
Access Type	For the administrator, this is always Get . SNMP Get commands allow the user to make see configuration details about the ZyXEL Device.
Authentication Protocol	Select an authentication algorithm. MD5 (Message Digest 5) and SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Privacy Protocol	Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication with this user. You can choose one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DES - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data. • AES - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data. • None - no encryption is used.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Internal RADIUS Server

The ZyXEL Device can use its internal RADIUS server to authenticate wireless clients. It can also serve as a RADIUS server to authenticate other APs and their wireless clients. For more background information on RADIUS, see [Section 9.10 on page 136](#).

15.1 Internal RADIUS Overview

The ZyXEL Device has a built-in RADIUS server that can authenticate wireless clients or other trusted APs.

The ZyXEL Device can function as an AP and as a RADIUS server at the same time.

PEAP (Protected EAP) and MD5 authentication is implemented on the internal RADIUS server using simple username and password methods over a secure TLS connection. See the appendices for more information on the types of EAP authentication and the internal RADIUS authentication method used in your ZyXEL Device.

- Use the **AUTH. SERVER > Setting** screen to turn the ZyAIR's internal RADIUS server off or on and to view information about the ZyXEL Device's certificates.
- Use the **AUTH. SERVER > Trusted AP** screen to specify APs as trusted. Trusted APs can use the ZyAIR's internal RADIUS server to authenticate wireless clients.
- Use the **AUTH. SERVER > Trusted Users** screen to configure a list of wireless client user names and passwords for the ZyAIR to authenticate.

15.2 Internal RADIUS Server Setting

The **AUTH. SERVER > Setting** screen displays information about certificates. The certificates are used by wireless clients to authenticate the RADIUS server. Information matching the certificate is held on the wireless client's utility. A password and user name on the utility must match the **Trusted Users** list so that the RADIUS server can be authenticated.



The internal RADIUS server does not support domain accounts (DOMAIN/user). When you configure your Windows XP SP2 Wireless Zero Configuration PEAP/MS-CHAPv2 settings, deselect the Use Windows logon name and password check box. When authentication begins, a pop-up dialog box requests you to type a Name, Password and Domain of the RADIUS server. Specify a name and password only, do not specify a domain.

Click **AUTH. SERVER > Setting**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 108 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen

Setting	Trusted AP	Trusted Users				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Active						
Index	Name	Type	Subject	Issuer	Valid From	Valid To
1	auto_generated_self_signed_cert	SELF	CN=NWA-3160, 0019CB000001	CN=NWA-3160, 0019CB000001	2000 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT	2030 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select the Active check box to have the ZyXEL Device use its internal RADIUS server to authenticate wireless clients or other APs.
Index	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order. Use the CERTIFICATES screens to manage certificates. The internal RADIUS server uses one of the certificates listed in this screen to authenticate each wireless client. The exact certificate used depends on the certificate information configured on the wireless client.
Name	<p>This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.</p> <p>auto_generated_self_signed_cert is the factory default certificate common to all ZyXEL Devices that use certificates.</p> <p>Note: It is recommended that you replace the factory default certificate with one that uses your ZyXEL Device's MAC address. Do this when you first log in to the ZyXEL Device or in the CERTIFICATES > My Certificates screen.</p>

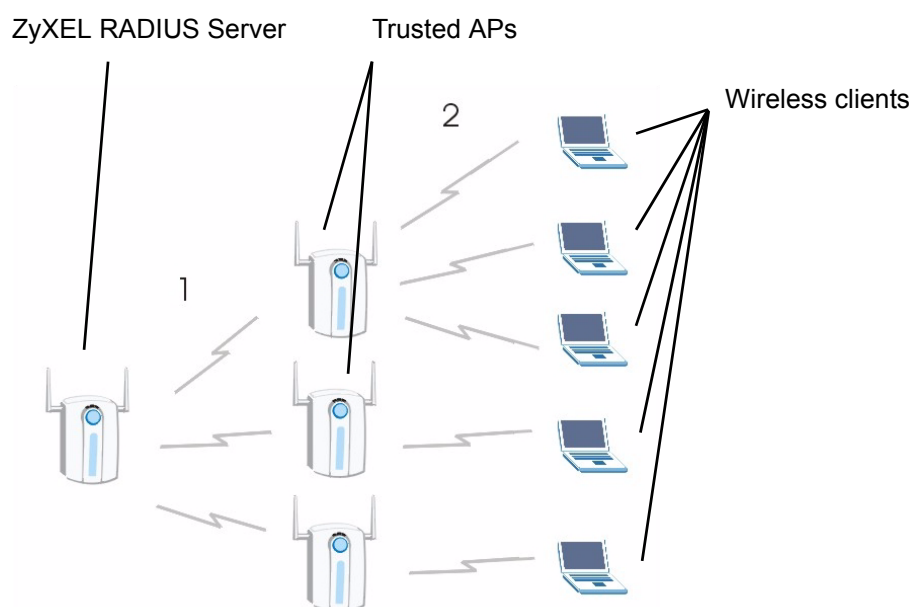
Table 68 Internal RADIUS Server Setting Screen Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	<p>This field displays what kind of certificate this is.</p> <p>REQ represents a certification request and is not yet a valid certificate. Send a certification request to a certification authority, which then issues a certificate. Use the My Certificate Import screen to import the certificate and replace the request.</p> <p>SELF represents a self-signed certificate.</p> <p>*SELF represents the default self-signed certificate, which the ZyXEL Device uses to sign imported trusted remote host certificates.</p> <p>CERT represents a certificate issued by a certification authority.</p>
Subject	<p>This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.</p>
Issuer	<p>This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field.</p>
Valid From	<p>This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.</p>
Valid To	<p>This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to have the ZyXEL Device use certificates to authenticate wireless clients.</p>
Reset	<p>Click Reset to start configuring this screen afresh.</p>

15.3 Trusted AP Overview

A trusted AP is an AP that uses the ZyXEL Device's internal RADIUS server to authenticate its wireless clients. Each wireless client must have a user name and password configured in the **AUTH. SERVER > Trusted Users** screen.

The following figure shows how this is done in two phases.

Figure 109 Trusted AP Overview

- 1 Configure an IP address and shared secret in the **Trusted AP** database to authenticate an AP as a trusted AP.
- 2 Configure wireless client user names and passwords in the **Trusted Users** database to use a trusted AP as a relay between the ZyXEL Device's internal RADIUS server and the wireless clients. The wireless clients can then be authenticated by the ZyXEL Device's internal RADIUS server.

15.4 Configuring Trusted AP

To specify trusted APs, click the **AUTH SERVER** link under **ADVANCED** and then the **Trusted AP** tab. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 110 Trusted AP Screen

#	Active	IP Address	Shared Secret
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	127.0.0.1	Abcdabc
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
29	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
30	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
31	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	
32	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 Trusted AP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field displays the trusted AP index number.
Active	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device use the IP Address and Shared Secret to authenticate a trusted AP.
IP Address	Type the IP address of the trusted AP in dotted decimal notation.
Shared Secret	Enter a password (up to 31 alphanumeric characters, no spaces) as the key for encrypting communications between the AP and the ZyXEL Device. The key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the AP and the ZyXEL Device. Both the ZyXEL Device's IP address and this shared secret must also be configured in the "external RADIUS" server fields of the trusted AP. Note: The first trusted AP fields are for the ZyXEL Device itself.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

15.5 Configuring Trusted Users

A trusted user entry consists of a wireless client user name and password. To configure trusted user entries, click **AUTH SERVER > Trusted Users**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 111 Trusted Users Screen

#	Active	User Name	Password
1	<input type="checkbox"/>		
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		
...			
124	<input type="checkbox"/>		
125	<input type="checkbox"/>		
126	<input type="checkbox"/>		
127	<input type="checkbox"/>		
128	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Note: Password: Maximum 14 ASCII characters with PEAP

Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 70 Trusted Users

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field displays the trusted user index number.
Active	Select this check box to have the ZyAIR authenticate wireless clients with the same user name and password activated on their wireless utilities.
User Name	Enter the user name for this user account. This name can be up to 31 alphanumeric characters long, including spaces. The wireless client's utility must use this name as its login name.
Password	Type a password (up to 31 ASCII characters) for this user profile. Note that as you type a password, the screen displays a (*) for each character you type. The password on the wireless client's utility must be the same as this password. Note: If you are using PEAP authentication, this password field is limited to 14 ASCII characters in length.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Certificates

This chapter gives background information about public-key certificates and explains how to use them.

16.1 Certificates Overview

The ZyXEL Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. A certificate contains the certificate owner's identity and public key. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.

A Certification Authority (CA) issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner. There are commercial certification authorities like CyberTrust or VeriSign and government certification authorities. You can use the ZyXEL Device to generate certification requests that contain identifying information and public keys and then send the certification requests to a certification authority.

In public-key encryption and decryption, each host has two keys. One key is public and can be made openly available; the other key is private and must be kept secure. Public-key encryption in general works as follows.

- 1 Tim wants to send a private message to Jenny. Tim generates a public key pair. What is encrypted with one key can only be decrypted using the other.
- 2 Tim keeps the private key and makes the public key openly available.
- 3 Tim uses his private key to encrypt the message and sends it to Jenny.
- 4 Jenny receives the message and uses Tim's public key to decrypt it.
- 5 Additionally, Jenny uses her own private key to encrypt a message and Tim uses Jenny's public key to decrypt the message.

The ZyXEL Device uses certificates based on public-key cryptology to authenticate users attempting to establish a connection, not to encrypt the data that you send after establishing a connection. The method used to secure the data that you send through an established connection depends on the type of connection. For example, a VPN tunnel might use the triple DES encryption algorithm.

The certification authority uses its private key to sign certificates. Anyone can then use the certification authority's public key to verify the certificates.

A certification path is the hierarchy of certification authority certificates that validate a certificate. The ZyXEL Device does not trust a certificate if any certificate on its path has expired or been revoked.

Certification authorities maintain directory servers with databases of valid and revoked certificates. A directory of certificates that have been revoked before the scheduled expiration is called a CRL (Certificate Revocation List). The ZyXEL Device can check a peer's certificate against a directory server's list of revoked certificates. The framework of servers, software, procedures and policies that handles keys is called PKI (public-key infrastructure).

16.1.1 Advantages of Certificates

Certificates offer the following benefits.

- The ZyXEL Device only has to store the certificates of the certification authorities that you decide to trust, no matter how many devices you need to authenticate.
- Key distribution is simple and very secure since you can freely distribute public keys and you never need to transmit private keys.

16.2 Self-signed Certificates

You can have the ZyXEL Device act as a certification authority and sign its own certificates.

16.3 Verifying a Certificate

Before you import a trusted CA certificate into the ZyXEL Device, you should verify that you have the actual certificate. This is especially important since the ZyXEL Device also trusts any valid certificate signed by any of the imported trusted CA certificates.

16.3.1 Checking the Fingerprint of a Certificate on Your Computer

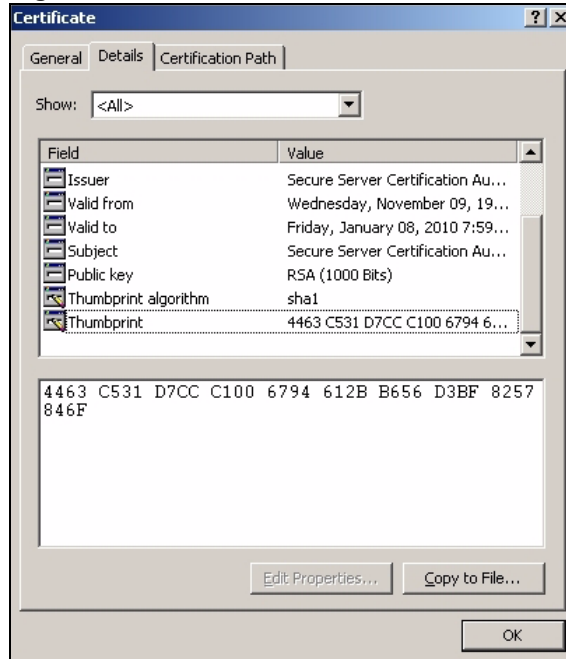
A certificate's fingerprints are message digests calculated using the MD5 or SHA1 algorithms. The following procedure describes how to check a certificate's fingerprint to verify that you have the actual certificate.

- 1 Browse to where you have the certificate saved on your computer.
- 2 Make sure that the certificate has a ".cer" or ".crt" file name extension.

Figure 112 Certificates on Your Computer



- 3 Double-click the certificate's icon to open the **Certificate** window. Click the **Details** tab and scroll down to the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields.

Figure 113 Certificate Details

- 4 Use a secure method to verify that the certificate owner has the same information in the **Thumbprint Algorithm** and **Thumbprint** fields. The secure method may vary according to your situation. Possible examples would be over the telephone or through an HTTPS connection.

16.4 Configuration Summary

This section summarizes how to manage certificates.

- Use the **My Certificate** screens to generate and export self-signed certificates or certification requests and import the ZyXEL Devices' CA-signed certificates.
- Use the **Trusted CA** screens to save CA certificates to the ZyXEL Device.

16.5 My Certificates

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** to open the ZyXEL Device's summary list of certificates and certification requests. Certificates display in black and certification requests display in gray. See the following figure.

Figure 114 My Certificates

My Certificates **Trusted CAs**

PKI Storage Space in Use

0% 100%

Replace Factory Default Certificate

Factory Default Certificate Name: auto_generated_self_signed_cert

The factory default certificate is common to all NWA models. Click Replace to create a certificate using your NWA's MAC address that will be specific to this device.

My Certificates Setting

#	Name	Type	Subject	Issuer	Valid From	Valid To
1	auto_generated_self_signed_cert	*SELF	CN=NWA-3500 Factory Default Certificate	CN=NWA-3500 Factory Default Certificate	2000 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT	2030 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 My Certificates

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PKI Storage Space in Use	This bar displays the percentage of the ZyXEL Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When you are using 80% or less of the storage space, the bar is green. When the amount of space used is over 80%, the bar is red. When the bar is red, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates.
Replace	This button displays when the ZyXEL Device has the factory default certificate. The factory default certificate is common to all ZyXEL Devices that use certificates. ZyXEL recommends that you use this button to replace the factory default certificate with one that uses your ZyXEL Device's MAC address.
#	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. It is recommended that you give each certificate a unique name.
Type	<p>This field displays what kind of certificate this is.</p> <p>REQ represents a certification request and is not yet a valid certificate. Send a certification request to a certification authority, which then issues a certificate. Use the My Certificate Import screen to import the certificate and replace the request.</p> <p>SELF represents a self-signed certificate.</p> <p>*SELF represents the default self-signed certificate, which the ZyXEL Device uses to sign imported trusted remote host certificates.</p> <p>CERT represents a certificate issued by a certification authority.</p>
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field.

Table 71 My Certificates (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Details	<p>Click the details icon to open a screen with an in-depth list of information about the certificate.</p> <p>Click the delete icon to remove the certificate. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate.</p> <p>You cannot delete a certificate that one or more features is configured to use.</p> <p>Do the following to delete a certificate that shows *SELF in the Type field.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure that no other features, such as HTTPS, VPN, SSH are configured to use the *SELF certificate. 2. Click the details icon next to another self-signed certificate (see the description on the Create button if you need to create a self-signed certificate). 3. Select the Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates check box. 4. Click Apply to save the changes and return to the My Certificates screen. 5. The certificate that originally showed *SELF displays SELF and you can delete it now. <p>Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action</p>
Create	Click Create to go to the screen where you can have the ZyXEL Device generate a certificate or a certification request.
Import	Click Import to open a screen where you can save the certificate that you have enrolled from a certification authority from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.
Delete	Click Delete to delete an existing certificate. A window display asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate. Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the current validity status of the certificates.

16.6 Certificate File Formats

The certification authority certificate that you want to import has to be in one of these file formats:

- Binary X.509: This is an ITU-T recommendation that defines the formats for X.509 certificates.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded X.509: This Privacy Enhanced Mail format uses 64 ASCII characters to convert a binary X.509 certificate into a printable form.
- Binary PKCS#7: This is a standard that defines the general syntax for data (including digital signatures) that may be encrypted. The ZyXEL Device currently allows the importation of a PKCS#7 file that contains a single certificate.
- PEM (Base-64) encoded PKCS#7: This Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format uses 64 ASCII characters to convert a binary PKCS#7 certificate into a printable form.

16.7 Importing a Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** and then **Import** to open the **My Certificate Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save an existing certificate to the ZyXEL Device.



You can import only a certificate that matches a corresponding certification request that was generated by the ZyXEL Device.



The certificate you import replaces the corresponding request in the **My Certificates** screen.



You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import it.

Figure 115 My Certificate Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72 My Certificate Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the certificate file you want to upload.

Table 72 My Certificate Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save the certificate on the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen.

16.8 Creating a Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** and then **Create** to open the **My Certificate Create** screen. Use this screen to have the ZyXEL Device create a self-signed certificate, enroll a certificate with a certification authority or generate a certification request, see the following figure.

Figure 116 My Certificate Create

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 My Certificate Create

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Name	Type up to 31 ASCII characters (not including spaces) to identify this certificate.
Subject Information	Use these fields to record information that identifies the owner of the certificate. You do not have to fill in every field, although the Common Name is mandatory. The certification authority may add fields (such as a serial number) to the subject information when it issues a certificate. It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.

Table 73 My Certificate Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Common Name	Select a radio button to identify the certificate's owner by IP address, domain name or e-mail address. Type the IP address (in dotted decimal notation), domain name or e-mail address in the field provided. The domain name or e-mail address can be up to 31 ASCII characters. The domain name or e-mail address is for identification purposes only and can be any string.
Organizational Unit	Type up to 127 characters to identify the organizational unit or department to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Organization	Type up to 127 characters to identify the company or group to which the certificate owner belongs. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Country	Type up to 127 characters to identify the nation where the certificate owner is located. You may use any character, including spaces, but the ZyXEL Device drops trailing spaces.
Key Length	Select a number from the drop-down list box to determine how many bits the key should use (512 to 2048). The longer the key, the more secure it is. A longer key also uses more PKI storage space.
Enrollment Options	These radio buttons deal with how and when the certificate is to be generated.
Create a self-signed certificate	Select Create a self-signed certificate to have the ZyXEL Device generate the certificate and act as the Certification Authority (CA) itself. This way you do not need to apply to a certification authority for certificates.
Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment	Select Create a certification request and save it locally for later manual enrollment to have the ZyXEL Device generate and store a request for a certificate. Use the My Certificate Details screen to view the certification request and copy it to send to the certification authority. Copy the certification request from the My Certificate Details screen (Section 16.9 on page 191) and then send it to the certification authority.
Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online	Select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online to have the ZyXEL Device generate a request for a certificate and apply to a certification authority for a certificate. You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the Trusted CAs screen. When you select this option, you must select the certification authority's enrollment protocol and the certification authority's certificate from the drop-down list boxes and enter the certification authority's server address. You also need to fill in the Reference Number and Key if the certification authority requires them.
Enrollment Protocol	Select the certification authority's enrollment protocol from the drop-down list box. Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by VeriSign and Cisco. Certificate Management Protocol (CMP) is a TCP-based enrollment protocol that was developed by the Public Key Infrastructure X.509 working group of the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) and is specified in RFC 2510.
CA Server Address	Enter the IP address (or URL) of the certification authority server.
CA Certificate	Select the certification authority's certificate from the CA Certificate drop-down list box. You must have the certification authority's certificate already imported in the Trusted CAs screen. Click Trusted CAs to go to the Trusted CAs screen where you can view (and manage) the ZyXEL Device's list of certificates of trusted certification authorities.

Table 73 My Certificate Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Request Authentication	When you select Create a certification request and enroll for a certificate immediately online , the certification authority may want you to include a reference number and key to identify you when you send a certification request. Fill in both the Reference Number and the Key fields if your certification authority uses CMP enrollment protocol. Just fill in the Key field if your certification authority uses the SECP enrollment protocol.
Key	Type the key that the certification authority gave you.
Apply	Click Apply to begin certificate or certification request generation.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen.

After you click **Apply** in the **My Certificate Create** screen, you see a screen that tells you the ZyXEL Device is generating the self-signed certificate or certification request.

After the ZyXEL Device successfully enrolls a certificate or generates a certification request or a self-signed certificate, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **My Certificates** screen.

If you configured the **My Certificate Create** screen to have the ZyXEL Device enroll a certificate and the certificate enrollment is not successful, you see a screen with a **Return** button that takes you back to the **My Certificate Create** screen. Click **Return** and check your information in the **My Certificate Create** screen. Make sure that the certification authority information is correct and that your Internet connection is working properly if you want the ZyXEL Device to enroll a certificate online.

16.9 My Certificate Details

Click **CERTIFICATES > My Certificates** to open the **My Certificates** screen ([Figure 114 on page 186](#)). Click the details button to open the **My Certificate Details** screen. You can use this screen to view in-depth certificate information and change the certificate's name. In the case of a self-signed certificate, you can set it to be the one that the ZyXEL Device uses to sign the trusted remote host certificates that you import to the ZyXEL Device.

Figure 117 My Certificate Details

Name auto_generated_self_signed_cert

Property
☒ Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates.

Certificate Path

Searching...

Refresh

Certificate Information

Type	Self-signed X.509 Certificate
Version	V3
Serial Number	946685120
Subject	CN=NWA-3160 0019CB000001
Issuer	CN=NWA-3160 0019CB000001
Signature Algorithm	rsa-pkcs1-sha1
Valid From	2000 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT
Valid To	2030 Jan 1st, 00:00:00 GMT
Key Algorithm	rsaEncryption (512 bits)
Subject Alternative Name	EMAIL=0019CB000001@auto.gen.cert
Key Usage	DigitalSignature, KeyEncipherment, KeyCertSign
Basic Constraint	Subject Type=CA, Path Length Constraint=1
MD5 Fingerprint	2b:d5:da:d5:cf:ae:b7:96:06:72:c2:24:0c:49:e0:2d
SHA1 Fingerprint	af:f6:db:ac:fe:ab:13:d1:43:24:bf:4f:43:e2:4d:4f:d7:f2:18:aa

Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format

```
eUFJU1BHLTEwMDBQIEZhY3RvcnkgRGVmYXVsdCBDZXJ0aWZpY2FOZTAeFwOwMDAx
MDEwMDAwMDBaFw0zMDAxMDEwMDAwMDEwMDAwMDQxMjAwBgNVBAMTKVp5QU1SEctMTAw
MFAgRmFjdG9yeSBEZWZhdWx0IEN1cnRpZmljYXR1MFwwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQAD
SwAwSAJBANB1YebOCBx9tjUjVL2VoIFv1WBrQM613TF1WQoHKQtSFywWdFNnXX5L
qXfX1YHFgoO8Mn6cJGUGhd5pWau8MCAwEAAN7MHkwDgYDVROPAQEABAQDAgKk
MCAGAlUdEQQZMBEeBFwZhY3Rvcn1AYXV0by5nZW4uY2VydASBgNVHRMBAQAECDAG
AQH/AgEBMDEGA1UdJQQqMCgGCCsGAQUFCAICBggrBgEFBQcDAQYIKwYBBQUHAWQG
CCsGAQUFBwMCAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAAOEAK/6Za1/UjL+WZk1E+h6UmGJYT/gG
DOyeDwtMQzydO2Rn3dDLGI9QJtZwJrD8njPGv3oR7AZrcw1T2VQkA9FA9g==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Export Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 My Certificate Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. If you want to change the name, type up to 31 characters to identify this certificate. You may use any character (not including spaces).
Property Default self-signed certificate which signs the imported remote host certificates.	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device use this certificate to sign the trusted remote host certificates that you import to the ZyXEL Device. This check box is only available with self-signed certificates. If this check box is already selected, you cannot clear it in this screen, you must select this check box in another self-signed certificate's details screen. This automatically clears the check box in the details screen of the certificate that was previously set to sign the imported trusted remote host certificates.

Table 74 My Certificate Details (continued)

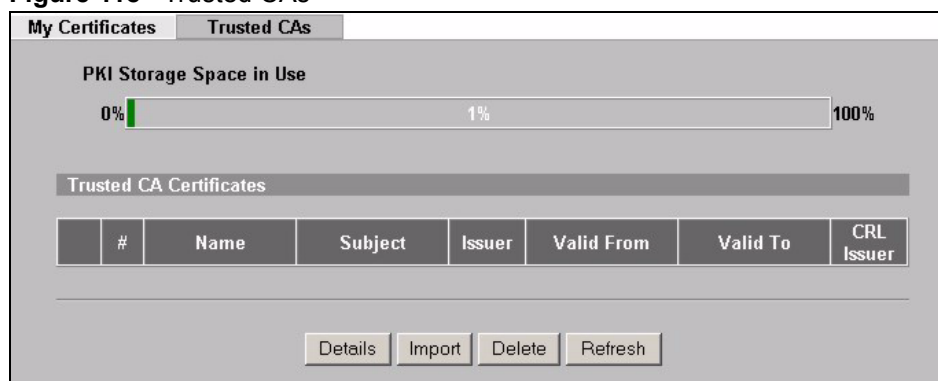
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Path	Click the Refresh button to have this read-only text box display the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the certificate (and the certificate itself). If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the certificate itself). If the certificate is a self-signed certificate, the certificate itself is the only one in the list. The ZyXEL Device does not trust the certificate and displays “Not trusted” in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the certification path.
Certificate Information	These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate’s owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). “X.509” means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates.
Version	This field displays the X.509 version number.
Serial Number	This field displays the certificate’s identification number given by the certification authority or generated by the ZyXEL Device.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate’s issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same as the Subject Name field.
Signature Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. The ZyXEL Device uses rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Some certification authorities may use ras-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm).
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Key Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate’s key pair (the ZyXEL Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example).
Subject Alternative Name	This field displays the certificate owner’s IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL).
Key Usage	This field displays for what functions the certificate’s key can be used. For example, “DigitalSignature” means that the key can be used to sign certificates and “KeyEncipherment” means that the key can be used to encrypt text.
Basic Constraint	This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority’s certificate and “Path Length Constraint=1” means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate’s path.
MD5 Fingerprint	This is the certificate’s message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm.

Table 74 My Certificate Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SHA1 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm.
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	<p>This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses 64 ASCII characters to convert the binary certificate into a printable form.</p> <p>You can copy and paste a certification request into a certification authority's web page, an e-mail that you send to the certification authority or a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later manual enrollment.</p> <p>You can copy and paste a certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste a certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).</p>
Export	Click this button and then Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes. You can only change the name, except in the case of a self-signed certificate, which you can also set to be the default self-signed certificate that signs the imported trusted remote host certificates.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the My Certificates screen.

16.10 Trusted CAs

Click **CERTIFICATES > Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen. This screen displays a summary list of certificates of the certification authorities that you have set the ZyXEL Device to accept as trusted. The ZyXEL Device accepts any valid certificate signed by a certification authority on this list as being trustworthy; thus you do not need to import any certificate that is signed by one of these certification authorities. See the following figure.

Figure 118 Trusted CAs

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 Trusted CAs

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PKI Storage Space in Use	This bar displays the percentage of the ZyXEL Device's PKI storage space that is currently in use. When you are using 80% or less of the storage space, the bar is green. When the amount of space used is over 80%, the bar is red. When the bar is red, you should consider deleting expired or unnecessary certificates before adding more certificates.
#	This field displays the certificate index number. The certificates are listed in alphabetical order.
Name	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate.
Subject	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's owner, such as CN (Common Name), OU (Organizational Unit or department), O (Organization or company) and C (Country). It is recommended that each certificate have unique subject information.
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as a common name, organizational unit or department, organization or company and country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject field.
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
CRL Issuer	This field displays Yes if the certification authority issues Certificate Revocation Lists for the certificates that it has issued and you have selected the Issues certificate revocation lists (CRL) check box in the certificate's details screen to have the ZyXEL Device check the CRL before trusting any certificates issued by the certification authority. Otherwise the field displays "No".
Details	Click Details to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check a certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.
Import	Click Import to open a screen where you can save the certificate of a certification authority that you trust, from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.
Delete	Click Delete to delete an existing certificate. A window display asking you to confirm that you want to delete the certificate. Note that subsequent certificates move up by one when you take this action.
Refresh	Click this button to display the current validity status of the certificates.

16.11 Importing a Trusted CA's Certificate

Click **CERTIFICATES > Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen and then click **Import** to open the **Trusted CA Import** screen. Follow the instructions in this screen to save a trusted certification authority's certificate to the ZyXEL Device, see the following figure.



You must remove any spaces from the certificate's filename before you can import the certificate.

Figure 119 Trusted CA Import

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 Trusted CA Import

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the certificate file you want to upload.
Apply	Click Apply to save the certificate on the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the Trusted CAs screen.

16.12 Trusted CA Certificate Details

Click **CERTIFICATES > Trusted CAs** to open the **Trusted CAs** screen. Click the details icon to open the **Trusted CA Details** screen. Use this screen to view in-depth information about the certification authority's certificate, change the certificate's name and set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check a certification authority's list of revoked certificates before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.

Figure 120 Trusted CA Details

Name: VeriSign.cer

Property
☐ Check incoming certificates issued by this CA against a CRL

Certificate Path

Searching...

Refresh

Certificate Information

Type: Self-signed X.509 Certificate
Version: V1
Serial Number: 3558802160848854062232407011527417280
Subject: OU=Secure Server Certification Authority, O=RSA Data Security\, Inc., C=US
Issuer: OU=Secure Server Certification Authority, O=RSA Data Security\, Inc., C=US
Signature Algorithm: rsa-pkcs1-md2
Valid From: 1994 Nov 9th, 00:00:00 GMT
Valid To: 2010 Jan 7th, 23:59:59 GMT
Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption (1000 bits)
MD5 Fingerprint: 74:7b:82:03:43:00:00:9e:6b:b3:ec:47:bf:85:a5:93
SHA1 Fingerprint: 44:63:c5:31:d7:cc:c1:00:67:94:61:2b:b6:56:d3:bf:82:57:84:6f

Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICNDCCAaECEAKTzn5ORf5eV288mBle3cAwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQECBQAwXzELMAkG
A1UEBhMCVVMxIDAeBgNVBAAwTF1JTQSBYXRhIFN1Y3VyaXR5LCBJbmMuMS4wLAYD
VQOLEyVTZW1cmUgU2VydGVyIEN1cnRpb2m1jYXRpb24gQXV0aG9yaXR5MB4XDTE0
MTEwOTAuMDAwMFoXDTEwMDEwNzIzNTk1OVowXzELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxIDAeBgNV
BAoTF1JTQSBYXRhIFN1Y3VyaXR5LCBJbmMuMS4wLAYDVQOLEyVTZW1cmUgU2VydGVy
IEN1cnRpb2m1jYXRpb24gQXV0aG9yaXR5MRIGBgMAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GJ
ADCBhQJ+AJLOesGugz5aqomDV6w1AXYMr60LDf06zV4ZFQD5YR&Ucm/jwjiioII
OhaGN1XpsSECrXZogZoFokvJ5yVmI1ZsiAeP94FZbYQHZAATcXY+m3dM41CJVphI
uR2nKRoTLkoRWZweFdVJVCxzCmmCsZc5nG1w20j13S3WYB57AgMBAAEwDQYJKoZI

```

Export Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 77 Trusted CA Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays the identifying name of this certificate. If you want to change the name, type up to 31 characters to identify this key certificate. You may use any character (not including spaces).
Property Check incoming certificates issued by this CA against a CRL	Select this check box to have the ZyXEL Device check incoming certificates that are issued by this certification authority against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL). Clear this check box to have the ZyXEL Device not check incoming certificates that are issued by this certification authority against a Certificate Revocation List (CRL).
Certificate Path	Click the Refresh button to have this read-only text box display the end entity's certificate and a list of certification authority certificates that shows the hierarchy of certification authorities that validate the end entity's certificate. If the issuing certification authority is one that you have imported as a trusted certification authority, it may be the only certification authority in the list (along with the end entity's own certificate). The ZyXEL Device does not trust the end entity's certificate and displays "Not trusted" in this field if any certificate on the path has expired or been revoked.
Refresh	Click Refresh to display the certification path.

Table 77 Trusted CA Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Certificate Information	These read-only fields display detailed information about the certificate.
Type	This field displays general information about the certificate. CA-signed means that a Certification Authority signed the certificate. Self-signed means that the certificate's owner signed the certificate (not a certification authority). X.509 means that this certificate was created and signed according to the ITU-T X.509 recommendation that defines the formats for public-key certificates.
Version	This field displays the X.509 version number.
Serial Number	This field displays the certificate's identification number given by the certification authority.
Subject	This field displays information that identifies the owner of the certificate, such as Common Name (CN), Organizational Unit (OU), Organization (O) and Country (C).
Issuer	This field displays identifying information about the certificate's issuing certification authority, such as Common Name, Organizational Unit, Organization and Country. With self-signed certificates, this is the same information as in the Subject Name field.
Signature Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to sign the certificate. Some certification authorities use rsa-pkcs1-sha1 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the SHA1 hash algorithm). Other certification authorities may use ras-pkcs1-md5 (RSA public-private key encryption algorithm and the MD5 hash algorithm).
Valid From	This field displays the date that the certificate becomes applicable. The text displays in red and includes a Not Yet Valid! message if the certificate has not yet become applicable.
Valid To	This field displays the date that the certificate expires. The text displays in red and includes an Expiring! or Expired! message if the certificate is about to expire or has already expired.
Key Algorithm	This field displays the type of algorithm that was used to generate the certificate's key pair (the ZyXEL Device uses RSA encryption) and the length of the key set in bits (1024 bits for example).
Subject Alternative Name	This field displays the certificate's owner's IP address (IP), domain name (DNS) or e-mail address (EMAIL).
Key Usage	This field displays for what functions the certificate's key can be used. For example, "DigitalSignature" means that the key can be used to sign certificates and "KeyEncipherment" means that the key can be used to encrypt text.
Basic Constraint	This field displays general information about the certificate. For example, Subject Type=CA means that this is a certification authority's certificate and "Path Length Constraint=1" means that there can only be one certification authority in the certificate's path.
CRL Distribution Points	This field displays how many directory servers with Lists of revoked certificates the issuing certification authority of this certificate makes available. This field also displays the domain names or IP addresses of the servers.
MD5 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the MD5 algorithm. You cannot use this value to verify that this is the remote host's actual certificate because the ZyXEL Device has signed the certificate; thus causing this value to be different from that of the remote host's actual certificate. See Section 16.3 on page 184 for how to verify a remote host's certificate before you import it into the ZyXEL Device.

Table 77 Trusted CA Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SHA1 Fingerprint	This is the certificate's message digest that the ZyXEL Device calculated using the SHA1 algorithm. You cannot use this value to verify that this is the remote host's actual certificate because the ZyXEL Device has signed the certificate; thus causing this value to be different from that of the remote host's actual certificate. See Section 16.3 on page 184 for how to verify a remote host's certificate before you import it into the ZyXEL Device.
Certificate in PEM (Base-64) Encoded Format	This read-only text box displays the certificate or certification request in Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) format. PEM uses 64 ASCII characters to convert the binary certificate into a printable form. You can copy and paste the certificate into an e-mail to send to friends or colleagues or you can copy and paste the certificate into a text editor and save the file on a management computer for later distribution (via floppy disk for example).
Export	Click this button and then Save in the File Download screen. The Save As screen opens, browse to the location that you want to use and click Save .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes. You can only change the name and/or set whether or not you want the ZyXEL Device to check the CRL that the certification authority issues before trusting a certificate issued by the certification authority.
Cancel	Click Cancel to quit and return to the Trusted CAs screen.

Log Screens

This chapter contains information about configuring general log settings and viewing the ZyXEL Device's logs.

17.1 Configuring View Log

The web configurator allows you to look at all of the ZyXEL Device's logs in one location.

Click **LOGS > View Log**. Use the **View Log** screen to see the logs for the categories that you selected in the **Log Settings** screen (see [Figure 122 on page 203](#)). Options include logs about system maintenance, system errors and access control.

You can view logs and alert messages in this page. Once the log entries are all used, the log will wrap around and the old logs will be deleted.

Click a column heading to sort the entries. A triangle indicates the direction of the sort order.

Figure 121 View Log

#	Time ▲	Message	Source	Destination	Notes
1	01/01/2000 01:00:10	WLAN STA Association			MACAddr:001302171185
2	01/01/2000 00:27:26	Successful HTTP login	172.23.37.27		User:admin

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 78 View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Display	Select a log category from the drop down list box to display logs within the selected category. To view all logs, select All Logs . The number of categories shown in the drop down list box depends on the selection in the Log Settings page.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.
Message	This field states the reason for the log.
Source	This field lists the source IP address and the port number of the incoming packet.
Destination	This field lists the destination IP address and the port number of the incoming packet.

Table 78 View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Notes	This field displays additional information about the log entry.
Email Log Now	Click Email Log Now to send the log screen to the e-mail address specified in the Log Settings page.
Refresh	Click Refresh to renew the log screen.
Clear Log	Click Clear Log to clear all the logs.

17.2 Configuring Log Settings

To change your ZyXEL Device's log settings, click **LOGS > Log Settings**. The screen appears as shown.

Use the **Log Settings** screen to configure to where and when the ZyXEL Device is to send the logs and which logs and/or immediate alerts it is to send.

An alert is a type of log that warrants more serious attention. Some categories such as **System Errors** consist of both logs and alerts. You may differentiate them by their color in the **View Log** screen. Alerts are displayed in red and logs are displayed in black.



Not all fields are available on all models.



When the ZyXEL Device is in CAPWAP AP controller mode, log messages from managed APs are relayed to the ZyXEL Device. The ZyXEL Device's settings in this screen determine whether events on the managed APs are logged or not. At the time of writing, AP controller mode is available on the NWA-3160 only.

Figure 122 Log Settings

View Log **Log Settings**

Address Info:

Mail Server: (Outgoing SMTP Server NAME or IP Address)

Mail Subject:

Send log to: (E-Mail Address)

Send alerts to: (E-Mail Address)

☐ SMTP Authentication

User NAME:

Password:

Syslog Logging:

☐ Active

Syslog IP Address: (Server NAME or IP Address)

Log Facility:

Send Log:

Log Schedule:

Day for Sending Log:

Time for Sending Log: (hour) (minute)

☐ Clear log after sending mail

Log

☒ System Maintenance

☒ System Errors

☒ PKI

☒ SSL/TLS

☒ 802.1x

☒ Wireless

☒ Internal RADIUS Server

☒ Rogue AP Detection

Send immediate alert

☒ System Errors

☒ PKI

☒ Rogue AP Detection

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 79 Log Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Address Info	
Mail Server	Enter the server name or the IP address of the mail server for the e-mail addresses specified below. If this field is left blank, logs and alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
Mail Subject	Type a title that you want to be in the subject line of the log e-mail message that the ZyXEL Device sends.
Send Log to	Logs are sent to the e-mail address specified in this field. If this field is left blank, logs will not be sent via e-mail.
Send Alerts to	Enter the e-mail address where the alert messages will be sent. If this field is left blank, alert messages will not be sent via e-mail.
SMTP Authentication	If you use SMTP authentication, the mail receiver should be the owner of the SMTP account.
User Name	If your e-mail account requires SMTP authentication, enter the username here.
Password	Enter the password associated with the above username.
Syslog Logging	Syslog logging sends a log to an external syslog server used to store logs.
Active	Click Active to enable syslog logging.
Syslog Server IP Address	Enter the server name or IP address of the syslog server that will log the selected categories of logs.

Table 79 Log Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Log Facility	Select a location from the drop down list box. The log facility allows you to log the messages to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Send Log	
Log Schedule	<p>This drop-down menu is used to configure the frequency of log messages being sent as E-mail:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Daily • Weekly • Hourly • When Log is Full • None. <p>If the Weekly or the Daily option is selected, specify a time of day when the E-mail should be sent. If the Weekly option is selected, then also specify which day of the week the E-mail should be sent. If the When Log is Full option is selected, an alert is sent when the log fills up. If you select None, no log messages are sent.</p>
Day for Sending Log	This field is only available when you select Weekly in the Log Schedule field. Use the drop down list box to select which day of the week to send the logs.
Time for Sending Log	Enter the time of the day in 24-hour format (for example 23:00 equals 11:00 pm) to send the logs.
Clear log after sending mail	Select the check box to clear all logs after logs and alert messages are sent via e-mail.
Log	Select the categories of logs that you want to record.
Send Immediate Alert	Select the categories of alerts for which you want the ZyXEL Device to immediately send e-mail alerts.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.
Reset	Click Reset to reconfigure all the fields in this screen.

17.3 Example Log Messages

This section provides descriptions of some example log messages.

Table 80 System Maintenance Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Time calibration is successful	The router has adjusted its time based on information from the time server.
Time calibration failed	The router failed to get information from the time server.
DHCP client gets %s	A DHCP client got a new IP address from the DHCP server.
DHCP client IP expired	A DHCP client's IP address has expired.
DHCP server assigns %s	The DHCP server assigned an IP address to a client.
SMT Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router's SMT interface.
SMT Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router's SMT interface.
WEB Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router's web configurator interface.
WEB Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router's web configurator interface.

Table 80 System Maintenance Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
TELNET Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via telnet.
TELNET Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via telnet.
FTP Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via FTP.
FTP Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via FTP.

Table 81 ICMP Notes

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
0		Echo Reply
	0	Echo reply message
3		Destination Unreachable
	0	Net unreachable
	1	Host unreachable
	2	Protocol unreachable
	3	Port unreachable
	4	A packet that needed fragmentation was dropped because it was set to Don't Fragment (DF)
	5	Source route failed
4		Source Quench
	0	A gateway may discard internet datagrams if it does not have the buffer space needed to queue the datagrams for output to the next network on the route to the destination network.
5		Redirect
	0	Redirect datagrams for the Network
	1	Redirect datagrams for the Host
	2	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Network
	3	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Host
8		Echo
	0	Echo message
11		Time Exceeded
	0	Time to live exceeded in transit
	1	Fragment reassembly time exceeded
12		Parameter Problem
	0	Pointer indicates the error
13		Timestamp
	0	Timestamp request message
14		Timestamp Reply
	0	Timestamp reply message
15		Information Request
	0	Information request message

Table 81 ICMP Notes (continued)

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
16		Information Reply
	0	Information reply message

Table 82 Sys log

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Mon dd hr:mm:ss hostname src="<srcIP:srcPort>" dst="<dstIP:dstPort>" msg="<msg>" note="<note>"	This message is sent by the "RAS" when this syslog is generated. The messages and notes are defined in this appendix's other charts.

17.4 Log Commands

Go to the command interpreter interface (the Command Interpreter appendix explains how to access and use the commands).

17.4.1 Configuring What You Want the ZyXEL Device to Log

Use the `sys logs load` command to load the log setting buffer that allows you to configure which logs the ZyXEL Device is to record.

Use `sys logs category` followed by a log category and a parameter to decide what to record

Table 83 Log Categories and Available Settings

LOG CATEGORIES	AVAILABLE PARAMETERS
error	0, 1, 2, 3
mten	0, 1
Use 0 to not record logs for that category, 1 to record only logs for that category, 2 to record only alerts for that category, and 3 to record both logs and alerts for that category.	

Use the `sys logs save` command to store the settings in the ZyXEL Device (you must do this in order to record logs).

17.4.2 Displaying Logs

Use the `sys logs display` command to show all of the logs in the ZyXEL Device's log.

Use the `sys logs category display` command to show the log settings for all of the log categories.

Use the `sys logs display [log category]` command to show the logs in an individual ZyXEL Device log category.

Use the `sys logs clear` command to erase all of the ZyXEL Device's logs.

17.5 Log Command Example

This example shows how to set the ZyXEL Device to record the error logs and alerts and then view the results.

```
ras> sys logs load
ras> sys logs category error 3
ras> sys logs save
ras> sys logs display access
```

#.	time	source	destination	notes	message
0	11/11/2002 15:10:12	172.22.3.80:137	172.22.255.255:137	ACCESS	BLOCK

This chapter discusses how to configure VLAN on the ZyXEL Device.

18.1 VLAN

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network can belong to one or more groups. Only stations within the same group can talk to each other.

18.1.1 Management VLAN ID

The Management VLAN ID identifies the “management VLAN”. A device must be a member of this “management VLAN” in order to access and manage the ZyXEL Device. If a device is not a member of this VLAN, then that device cannot manage the ZyXEL Device.



If no devices are in the management VLAN, then you will be able to access the ZyXEL Device only through the console port (not through the network).

18.1.2 VLAN Tagging

The ZyXEL Device supports IEEE 802.1q VLAN tagging. Tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header of a frame to identify VLAN membership. The ZyXEL Device can identify VLAN tags for incoming Ethernet frames and add VLAN tags to outgoing Ethernet frames.



You must connect the ZyXEL Device to a VLAN-aware device that is a member of the management VLAN in order to perform management. See the Configuring Management VLAN example BEFORE you configure the VLAN screens.

18.2 Configuring VLAN

The ZyXEL Device allows you to configure VLAN based on SSID profile (wireless VLAN), and / or based on your RADIUS server (RADIUS VLAN).

- When you use wireless VLAN, the ZyXEL Device tags all packets from an SSID with the VLAN ID you set in the **Wireless VLAN** screen.
- When you use RADIUS VLAN, your RADIUS server assigns VLAN IDs to a user or user group's traffic based on the configuration in the **RADIUS VLAN** screen.
- When you use wireless VLAN and RADIUS VLAN together, the ZyXEL Device first tries to assign VLAN IDs based on RADIUS VLAN configuration. If a client's user name does not match an entry in the **RADIUS VLAN** screen, the ZyXEL Device assigns a VLAN ID based on the settings in the **Wireless VLAN** screen. See [Section 18.2.4 on page 216](#) for more information.



To use RADIUS VLAN, you must first select Enable VIRTUAL LAN and configure the Management VLAN ID in the VLAN > WIRELESS VLAN screen.

18.2.1 Wireless VLAN

Click **VLAN > WIRELESS VLAN**. The following screen appears.

Figure 123 WIRELESS VLAN

WIRELESS VLAN

RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

☐ Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID

1

(1 ~ 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	<div>1</div>	<div>0</div>
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	<div>2</div>	<div>0</div>
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	<div>3</div>	<div>0</div>
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	<div>4</div>	<div>0</div>
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	<div>5</div>	<div>0</div>
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	<div>6</div>	<div>0</div>
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	<div>7</div>	<div>0</div>
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	<div>8</div>	<div>0</div>
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	<div>9</div>	<div>0</div>
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	<div>10</div>	<div>0</div>
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	<div>11</div>	<div>0</div>
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	<div>12</div>	<div>0</div>
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	<div>13</div>	<div>0</div>
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	<div>14</div>	<div>0</div>
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	<div>15</div>	<div>0</div>
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	<div>16</div>	<div>0</div>

Apply

Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen

Table 84 WIRELESS VLAN

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Enable VIRTUAL LAN	Select this box to enable VLAN tagging.
Management VLAN ID	<div>Enter a number from 1 to 4094 to define this VLAN group. At least one device in your network must belong to this VLAN group in order to manage the ZyXEL Device.</div> <div>Note: Mail and FTP servers must have the same management VLAN ID to communicate with the ZyXEL Device.</div> <div>See Section 18.2.3 on page 213 for more information.</div>
VLAN Mapping Table	Use this table to have the ZyXEL Device assign VLAN tags to packets from wireless clients based on the SSID they use to connect to the ZyXEL Device.
Index	This is the index number of the SSID profile.
Name	This is the name of the SSID profile.
SSID	This is the SSID the profile uses.

Table 84 WIRELESS VLAN

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID number from 1 to 4094. Packets coming from the WLAN using this SSID profile are tagged with the VLAN ID number by the ZyXEL Device. Different SSID profiles can use the same or different VLAN IDs. This allows you to split wireless stations into groups using similar VLAN IDs.
Second Rx VLAN ID	Enter a number from 1 to 4094, but different from the VLAN ID . Traffic received from the LAN that is tagged with this VLAN ID is sent to all SSIDs with this VLAN ID configured in the VLAN ID or Second Rx VLAN ID fields. See Section 18.2.5 on page 224 for more information.
Apply	Click this to save your changes to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to return this screen to its last-saved settings.

18.2.2 RADIUS VLAN

Click **VLAN > RADIUS VLAN**. The following screen appears.

Figure 124 RADIUS VLAN

Wireless VLAN
RADIUS VLAN

RADIUS VIRTUAL LAN Setup

☐ Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN name error!

VLAN Mapping Table

	Index	ID	Name
	1	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	2	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	3	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	4	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	5	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	6	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	7	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	8	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	9	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	10	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	11	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	12	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	13	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	14	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	15	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel
	16	1 (1 ~ 4094)	zyxel

Apply
Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 85 RADIUS VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN name error	Select this to have the ZyXEL Device forbid access to wireless clients when the VLAN attributes sent from the RADIUS server do not match a configured Name field. When you select this check box, only users with names configured in this screen can access the network through the ZyXEL Device.
VLAN Mapping Table	Use this table to map names to VLAN IDs so that the RADIUS server can assign each user or user group a mapped VLAN ID. See your RADIUS server documentation for more information on configuring VLAN ID attributes. See Section 18.2.4 on page 216 for more information.
Index	Select a check box to enable the VLAN mapping profile.
ID	Type a VLAN ID. Incoming traffic from the WLAN is authorized and assigned a VLAN ID before it is sent to the LAN.
Name	Type a name to have the ZyXEL Device check for specific VLAN attributes on incoming messages from the RADIUS server. Access-accept packets sent by the RADIUS server contain VLAN related attributes. The configured Name fields are checked against these attributes. If a configured Name field matches these attributes, the corresponding VLAN ID is added to packets sent from this user to the LAN. If the VLAN-related attributes sent by the RADIUS server do not match a configured Name field, a wireless station is assigned the wireless VLAN ID associated with its SSID (unless the Block station if RADIUS server assign VLAN error! check box is selected).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

18.2.3 Configuring Management VLAN Example

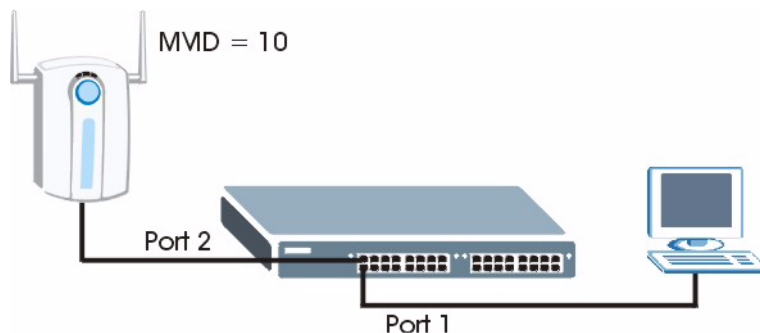
This section shows you how to create a VLAN on an Ethernet switch.

By default, the port on the ZyXEL Device is a member of the management VLAN (VLAN ID 1). The following procedure shows you how to configure a tagged VLAN.



Use the out-of-band management port or console port to configure the switch if you misconfigure the management VLAN and lock yourself out from performing in-band management.

On an Ethernet switch, create a VLAN that has the same management VLAN ID as the ZyXEL Device. The following figure has the ZyXEL Device connected to port 2 of the switch and your computer connected to port 1. The management VLAN ID is ten.

Figure 125 Management VLAN Configuration Example

Perform the following steps in the switch web configurator:

- 1 Click **VLAN** under **Advanced Application**.
- 2 Click **Static VLAN**.
- 3 Select the **ACTIVE** check box.
- 4 Type a **Name** for the VLAN ID.
- 5 Type a **VLAN Group ID**. This should be the same as the management VLAN ID on the ZyXEL Device.
- 6 Enable **Tx Tagging** on the port which you want to connect to the ZyXEL Device.
Disable **Tx Tagging** on the port you are using to connect to your computer.
- 7 Under **Control**, select **Fixed** to set the port as a member of the VLAN.

Figure 126 VLAN-Aware Switch - Static VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Static VLAN' configuration page. The 'ACTIVE' checkbox is checked. The 'Name' field contains 'MD1' and the 'VLAN Group ID' field contains '10'. Below these fields is a table for port configuration:

Port	Control	Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging


- 8 Click **Apply**. The following screen displays.

Figure 127 VLAN-Aware Switch

VID	Active	Name	Delete
10	Yes	VID1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Yes	2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Yes	3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	Yes	VLAN4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	Yes	cth-test	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 9 Click **VLAN Status** to display the following screen.

Figure 128 VLAN-Aware Switch - VLAN Status



VLAN Status

VLAN Port Setting

Static VLAN

The Number Of VLAN = 5

Index	VID	Port Number																Elapsed Time	Status												
		2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	S2	1	3			5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	S1
1	10	T	-	-	-	T	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:28	Static
2	2	T	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:28	Static	
3	3	T	U	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:28	Static	
4	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:27	Static	
5	5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0:08:27	Static	

Follow the instructions in the Quick Start Guide to set up your ZyXEL Device for configuration. The ZyXEL Device should be connected to the VLAN-aware switch. In the above example, the switch is using port 1 to connect to your computer and port 2 to connect to the ZyXEL Device: [Figure 125 on page 214](#).

- 1 In the ZyXEL Device web configurator click **VLAN** to open the VLAN setup screen.
- 2 Select the **Enable VLAN Tagging** check box and type a **Management VLAN ID** (10 in this example) in the field provided.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

Figure 129 VLAN Setup

WIRELESS VLAN RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

☒ Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID: (1 ~ 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	1	0
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	2	0
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	3	0
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	4	0
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	5	0
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	6	0
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	7	0
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	8	0
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	9	0
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	10	0
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	11	0
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	12	0
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	13	0
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	14	0
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	15	0
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	16	0

- 4 The ZyXEL Device attempts to connect with a VLAN-aware device. You can now access and manage the ZyXEL Device through the Ethernet switch.



If you do not connect the ZyXEL Device to a correctly configured VLAN-aware device, you will lock yourself out of the ZyXEL Device. If this happens, you must reset the ZyXEL Device to access it again.

18.2.4 Configuring Microsoft's IAS Server Example

Dynamic VLAN assignment can be used with the ZyXEL Device. Dynamic VLAN assignment allows network administrators to assign a specific VLAN (configured on the ZyXEL Device) to an individual's Windows User Account. When a wireless station is successfully authenticated to the network, it is automatically placed into its respective VLAN.

ZyXEL uses the following standard RADIUS attributes returned from Microsoft's IAS RADIUS service to place the wireless station into the correct VLAN:

Table 86 Standard RADIUS Attributes

ATTRIBUTE NAME	TYPE	VALUE
Tunnel-Type	064	13 (decimal) – VLAN
Tunnel-Medium-Type	065	6 (decimal) – 802
Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	081	<vlan-name> (string) – either the Name you enter in the ZyXEL Device's VLAN > RADIUS VLAN screen or the number. See Figure 141 on page 222 .

The following occurs under Dynamic VLAN Assignment:

- 1 When you configure your wireless credentials, the ZyXEL Device sends the information to the IAS server using RADIUS protocol.
- 2 Authentication by the RADIUS server is successful.
- 3 The RADIUS server sends three attributes related to this feature.
- 4 The ZyXEL Device compares these attributes with the VLAN screen mapping table.
 - 4a If the **Name**, for example “VLAN 20” is found, the mapped VLAN ID is used.
 - 4b If the **Name** is not found in the mapping table, the string in the **Tunnel-Private-Group-ID** attribute is considered as a number ID format, for example 2493. The range of the number ID (Name:string) is between 1 and 4094.
 - 4c If a or b are not matched, the ZyXEL Device uses the VLAN ID configured in the **WIRELESS VLAN** screen and the wireless station. This **VLAN ID** is independent and hence different to the **ID** in the VLAN screen.

18.2.4.1 Configuring VLAN Groups

To configure a VLAN group you must first define the VLAN Groups on the Active Directory server and assign the user accounts to each VLAN Group.

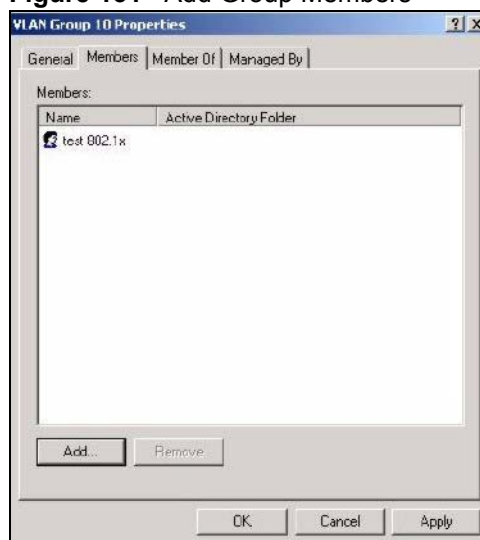
- 1 Using the Active Directory Users and Computers administrative tool, create the VLAN Groups that will be used for each VLAN ID. One VLAN Group must be created for each VLAN defined on the ZyXEL Device. The VLAN Groups must be created as Global/Security groups.
 - Type a name for the **VLAN Group** that describes the VLAN Group's function.
 - Select the **Global** Group scope parameter check box.
 - Select the **Security** Group type parameter check box.
 - Click **OK**.

Figure 130 New Global Security Group

2 In **VLAN Group ID Properties**, click the **Members** tab.

- The IAS uses group memberships to determine which user accounts belong to which VLAN groups. Click the **Add** button and configure the VLAN group details.

3 Repeat the previous step to add each VLAN group required.

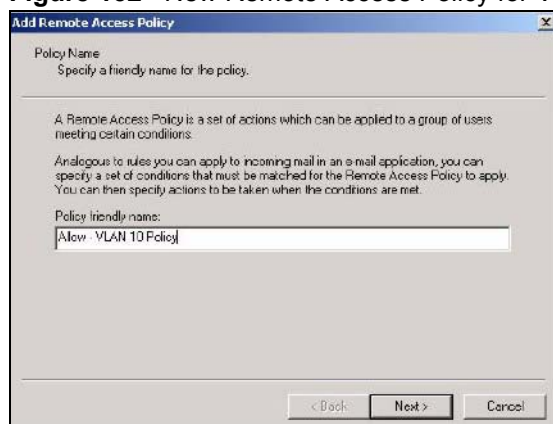
Figure 131 Add Group Members

18.2.4.2 Configuring Remote Access Policies

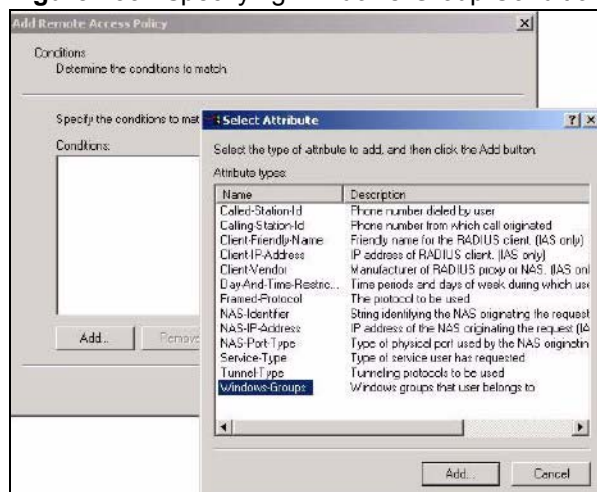
Once the VLAN Groups have been created, the IAS Remote Access Policy needs to be defined. This allows the IAS to compare the user account being authenticated against the group memberships of each VLAN Group.

- 1** Using the **Remote Access Policy** option on the Internet Authentication Service management interface, create a new VLAN Policy for each VLAN Group defined in the previous section. The order of the remote access policies is important. The most specific policies should be placed at the top of the policy list and the most general at the bottom. For example, if the Day-And-Time Restriction policy is still present, it should be moved to the bottom or deleted to allow the VLAN Group policies to take precedence.
 - Right click **Remote Access Policy** and select **New Remote Access Policy**.

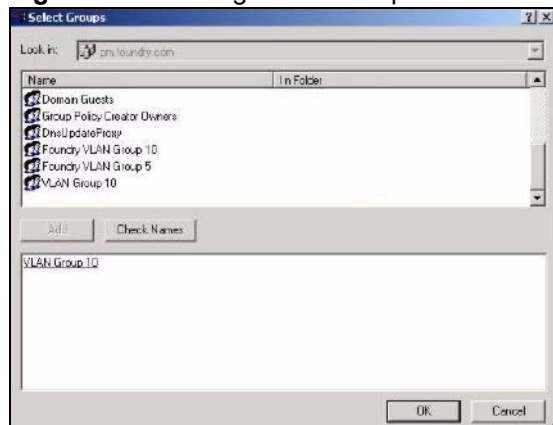
- Enter a **Policy friendly name** that describes the policy. Each Remote Access Policy will be matched to one VLAN Group. An example may be, **Allow - VLAN 10 Policy**.
- Click **Next**.

Figure 132 New Remote Access Policy for VLAN Group

- 2 The **Conditions** window displays. Select **Add** to add a condition for this policy to act on.
- 3 In the **Select Attribute** screen, click **Windows-Groups** and the **Add** button.

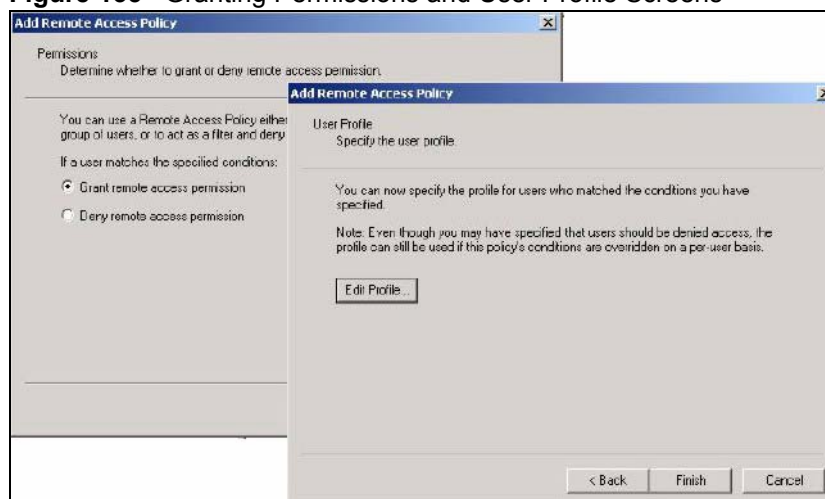
Figure 133 Specifying Windows-Group Condition

- 4 The **Select Groups** window displays. Select a remote access policy and click the **Add** button. The policy is added to the field below. Only one VLAN Group should be associated with each policy.
- 5 Click **OK** and **Next** in the next few screens to accept the group value.

Figure 134 Adding VLAN Group

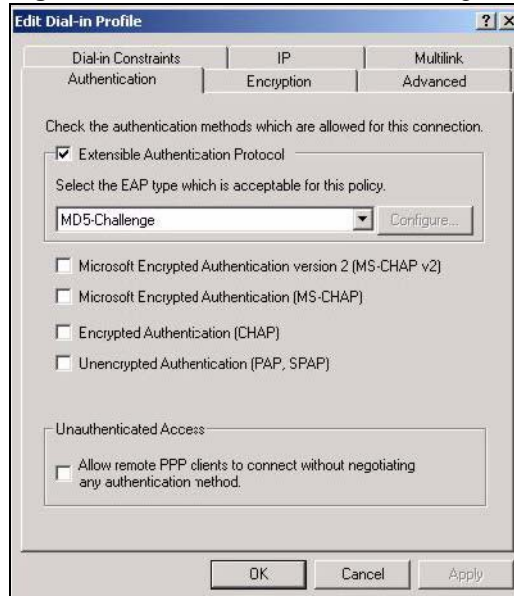
6 When the **Permissions** options screen displays, select **Grant remote access permission**.

- Click **Next** to grant access based on group membership.
- Click the **Edit Profile** button.

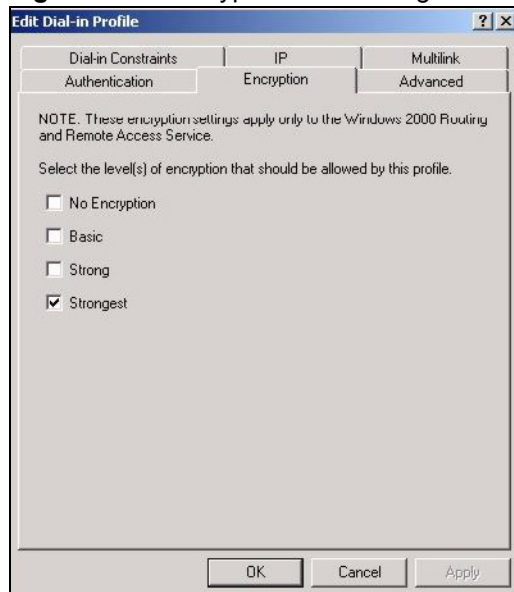
Figure 135 Granting Permissions and User Profile Screens

7 The **Edit Dial-in Profile** screen displays. Click the **Authentication** tab and select the **Extensible Authentication Protocol** check box.

- Select an EAP type depending on your authentication needs from the drop-down list box.
- Clear the check boxes for all other authentication types listed below the drop-down list box.

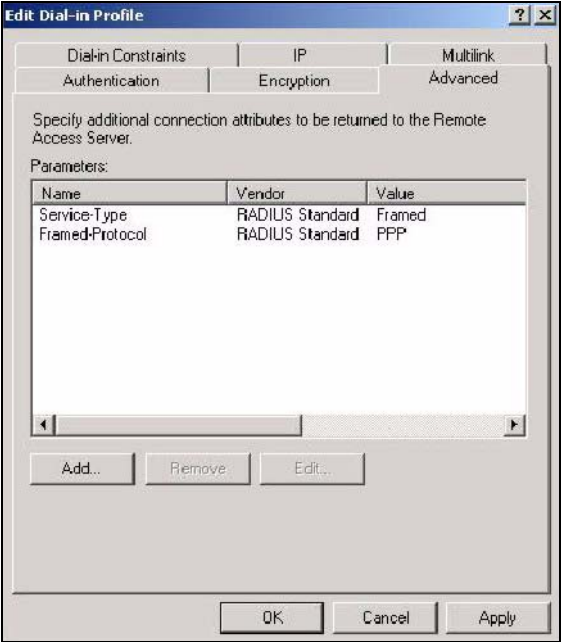
Figure 136 Authentication Tab Settings

- 8 Click the **Encryption** tab. Select the **Strongest** encryption option. This step is not required for EAP-MD5, but is performed as a safeguard.

Figure 137 Encryption Tab Settings

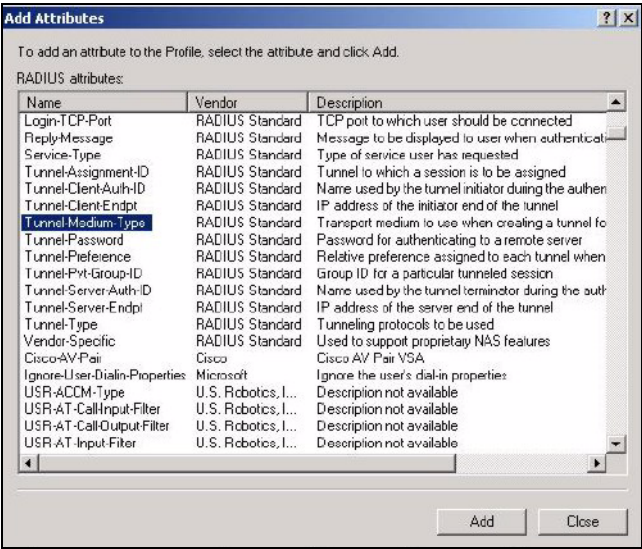
- 9 Click the **IP** tab and select the **Client may request an IP address** check box for DHCP support.
- 10 Click the **Advanced** tab. The current default parameters returned to the ZyXEL Device should be **Service-Type** and **Framed-Protocol**.
- Click the **Add** button to add an additional three RADIUS VLAN attributes required for 802.1X Dynamic VLAN Assignment.

Figure 138 Connection Attributes Screen



- 11** The RADIUS Attribute screen displays. From the list, three RADIUS attributes will be added:
- Tunnel-Medium-Type
 - Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID
 - Tunnel-Type
- Click the **Add** button
 - Select **Tunnel-Medium-Type**
 - Click the **Add** button.

Figure 139 RADIUS Attribute Screen



- 12** The **Enumerable Attribute Information** screen displays. Select the **802** value from the **Attribute value** drop-down list box.
- Click **OK**.

Figure 140 802 Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Medium-Type

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Enumerable Attribute Information". It contains the following fields:

- Attribute name: Tunnel-Medium-Type
- Attribute number: 65
- Attribute format: Enumerator
- Attribute value: 802 (includes all 802 media plus Ethernet canonical format) (selected from a dropdown menu)

At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

13 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 139 on page 221](#).

- Select **Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID**.
- Click **Add**.

14 The **Attribute Information** screen displays.

- In the **Enter the attribute value in:** field select **String** and type a number in the range 1 to 4094 or a **Name** for this policy. This **Name** should match a name in the VLAN mapping table on the ZyXEL Device. Wireless stations belonging to the VLAN Group specified in this policy will be given a **VLAN ID** specified in the ZyXEL Device VLAN table.
- Click **OK**.

Figure 141 VLAN ID Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Attribute Information". It contains the following fields:

- Attribute name: Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID
- Attribute number: 81
- Attribute format: OctetString
- Enter the attribute value in: ☒ String ☐ Hexadecimal
- Value: 10

At the bottom are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

15 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 139 on page 221](#).

- Select **Tunnel-Type**.
- Click **Add**.

16 The **Enumerable Attribute Information** screen displays.

- Select **Virtual LANs (VLAN)** from the attribute value drop-down list box.
- Click **OK**.

Figure 142 VLAN Attribute Setting for Tunnel-Type

Enumerable Attribute Information

Attribute name:
Tunnel-Type

Attribute number:
64

Attribute format:
Enumerator

Attribute value:
Virtual LANs (VLAN)

OK Cancel

- 17 Return to the **RADIUS Attribute Screen** shown as [Figure 139 on page 221](#).
- Click the **Close** button.
 - The completed **Advanced** tab configuration should resemble the following screen.

Figure 143 Completed Advanced Tab

Allow - VLAN Group 10 Properties

Settings

Policy name:

Specify the condition:
Windows-Groups m

Add...

If a user matches th

☒ Grant remote c

☐ Deny remote c

Access will be is overridden: c

Edit Profile...

Edit Dial-in Profile

Dial-in Constraints | IP | Multilink

Authentication | Encryption | Advanced

Specify additional connection attributes to be returned to the Remote Access Server.

Parameters:

Name	Vendor	Value
Service-Type	RADIUS Standard	Framed
Framed-Protocol	RADIUS Standard	PPP
Tunnel-Medium-Type	RADIUS Standard	802 (includes all 802 m
Tunnel-Pvt-Group-ID	RADIUS Standard	10
Tunnel-Type	RADIUS Standard	Virtual LANs (VLAN)

Add... Remove Edit...

OK Cancel Apply

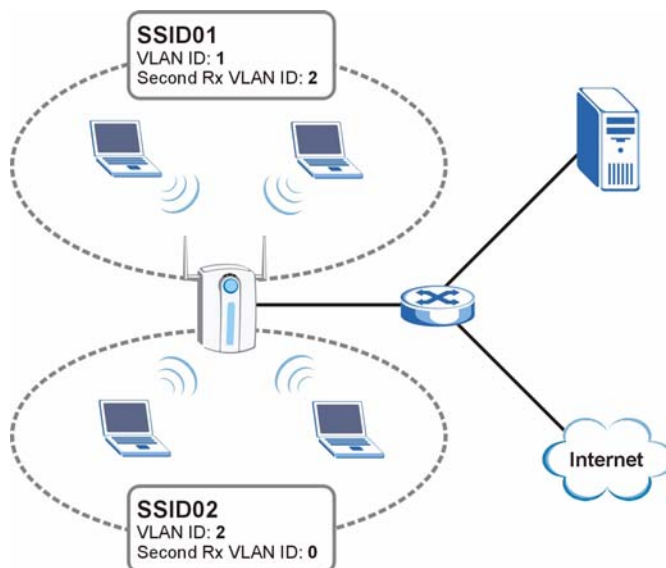


Repeat the **Configuring Remote Access Policies** procedure for each **VLAN Group** defined in the **Active Directory**. Remember to place the most general **Remote Access Policies** at the bottom of the list and the most specific at the top of the list.

18.2.5 Second Rx VLAN ID Example

In this example, the ZyXEL Device is configured to tag packets from **SSID01** with VLAN ID 1 and tag packets from **SSID02** with VLAN ID 2. **VLAN 1** and **VLAN 2** have access to a server, S, and the Internet, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 144 Second Rx VLAN ID Example



Packets sent from the server **S** back to the switch are tagged with a VLAN ID (incoming VLAN ID). These incoming VLAN packets are forwarded to the ZyXEL Device. The ZyXEL Device compares the VLAN ID in the packet header with each SSID's configured VLAN ID and second Rx VLAN ID settings.

In this example, **SSID01**'s second Rx VLAN ID is set to **2**. All incoming packets tagged with VLAN ID **2** are forwarded to **SSID02**, and also to **SSID01**. However, **SSID02** has no second Rx VLAN ID configured, and the ZyXEL Device forwards only packets tagged with VLAN ID **2** to it.

18.2.5.1 Second Rx VLAN Setup Example

The following steps show you how to setup a second Rx VLAN ID on the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 Log into the Web Configurator.
- 2 Click **VLAN > Wireless VLAN**.
- 3 If VLAN is not already enabled, click **Enable Virtual LAN** and set up the **Management VLAN ID** (see [Section 18.2.3 on page 213](#)).



If no devices are in the management VLAN, then no one will be able to access the ZyXEL Device and you will have to restore the default configuration file.

- 4 Select the SSID profile you want to configure (**SSID03** in this example), and enter the **VLAN ID** number (between 1 and 4094).

- 5 Enter a **Second Rx VLAN ID**. The following screen shows **SSID03** tagged with a **VLAN ID** of **3** and a **Second Rx VLAN ID** of **4**.

Figure 145 Configuring SSID: Second Rx VLAN ID Example

WIRELESS VLAN

RADIUS VLAN

VIRTUAL LAN Setup

☒ Enable VIRTUAL LAN

Wireless VIRTUAL LAN Setup

Management VLAN ID

10

(1 ~ 4094)

VLAN Mapping Table

Index	Name	SSID	VLAN ID	Second Rx VLAN ID
1	VoIP_SSID	ZyXEL01	<div>1</div>	<div>0</div>
2	Guest_SSID	ZyXEL02	<div>2</div>	<div>0</div>
3	SSID03	ZyXEL03	<div>3</div>	<div>4</div>
4	SSID04	ZyXEL04	<div>4</div>	<div>0</div>
5	SSID05	ZyXEL05	<div>5</div>	<div>0</div>
6	SSID06	ZyXEL06	<div>6</div>	<div>0</div>
7	SSID07	ZyXEL07	<div>7</div>	<div>0</div>
8	SSID08	ZyXEL08	<div>8</div>	<div>0</div>
9	SSID09	ZyXEL09	<div>9</div>	<div>0</div>
10	SSID10	ZyXEL10	<div>10</div>	<div>0</div>
11	SSID11	ZyXEL11	<div>11</div>	<div>0</div>
12	SSID12	ZyXEL12	<div>12</div>	<div>0</div>
13	SSID13	ZyXEL13	<div>13</div>	<div>0</div>
14	SSID14	ZyXEL14	<div>14</div>	<div>0</div>
15	SSID15	ZyXEL15	<div>15</div>	<div>0</div>
16	SSID16	ZyXEL16	<div>16</div>	<div>0</div>

Apply

Reset

- 6 Click **Apply** to save these settings. Outgoing packets from clients in **SSID03** are tagged with a **VLAN ID** of **3**, and incoming packets with a **VLAN ID** of **3** or **4** are forwarded to **SSID03**.

Maintenance

This chapter displays system information such as ZyNOS firmware, port IP addresses and port traffic statistics.

19.1 Maintenance Overview

The maintenance screens can help you view system information, upload new firmware, manage configuration and restart your ZyXEL Device.

19.2 System Status Screen (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

Click **MAINTENANCE** to open the **System Status** screen, where you can see information about your ZyXEL Device. Note that the labels in this screen are READ-ONLY and are meant to be used for diagnostic purposes.

Figure 146 System Status

The screenshot shows a web interface with a top navigation bar containing tabs: Status, Association List, Channel Usage, F/W Upload, Configuration, and Restart. The 'Status' tab is selected. The main content area displays the following information:

- System Name : NWA-3160
- ZyNOS Firmware Version : V3.60(AAL.0)b1 | 04/13/2007
- IP Address : 192.168.1.2 DHCP : None
- IP Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0

At the bottom of the main content area, there is a button labeled 'Show Statistics'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 87 System Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This is the System Name you can configure in the SYSTEM > General screen. It is for identification purposes
ZyNOS Firmware Version	This is the ZyNOS Firmware version and date created. ZyNOS is ZyXEL's proprietary Network Operating System design.
IP Address	This is the Ethernet port IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This is the Ethernet port subnet mask.
DHCP	This is the Ethernet port DHCP role - Client or None .
Show Statistics	Click Show Statistics to see router performance statistics such as number of packets sent and number of packets received for each port.

19.2.1 System Statistics

Click **Maintenance > Show Statistics**. Read-only information here includes port status, packet specific statistics and bridge link status. Also provided are "system up time" and "poll interval(s)". The **Poll Interval** field is configurable. The fields in this screen vary according to the current wireless mode.

Figure 147 System Status: Show Statistics

Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
LAN	100M/Full	16724	10264	0	64	0	1:41:39
WLAN	54M	26107	725	0	0	0	6:15:52

Poll Interval(s) : sec

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 System Status: Show Statistics

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the Ethernet port (LAN) or wireless LAN.
Status	This shows the port speed and duplex setting if you are using Ethernet encapsulation for the Ethernet port. Ethernet port connections can be in half-duplex or full-duplex mode. Full-duplex refers to a device's ability to send and receive simultaneously, while half-duplex indicates that traffic can flow in only one direction at a time. The Ethernet port must use the same speed or duplex mode setting as the peer Ethernet port in order to connect. This shows the transmission speed only for the wireless adaptors.
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets on this port.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets on this port.
Collisions	This is the number of collisions on this port.
Tx B/s	This shows the transmission speed in bytes per second on this port.
Rx B/s	This shows the reception speed in bytes per second on this port.
Up Time	This is total amount of time the line has been up.
Poll Interval(s)	Enter the time interval for refreshing statistics.
Set Interval	Click this button to apply the new poll interval you entered above.
Stop	Click this button to stop refreshing statistics.

19.3 Association List

View the wireless stations that are currently associated with the ZyXEL Device in the **Association List** screen.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Association List** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 148 Association List

Status

Association List

Channel Usage

F/W Upload

Configuration

Restart

Stations

Index	MAC Address	Association Time	SSID	Signal
001	00:12:f0:e8:dc:b3	06:08:59 2000/01/01	ZyXEL01	54%

Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 89 Association List

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Stations	
Index	This is the index number of an associated wireless station.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated wireless station.
Association Time	This field displays the time a wireless station first associated with the ZyXEL Device.
SSID	This field displays the SSID to which the wireless station is associated.
Signal	This field displays the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the wireless connection.
Refresh	Click Refresh to reload the screen.

19.4 Channel Usage (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 Only)

The **Channel Usage** screen shows whether a channel is used by another wireless network or not. If a channel is being used, you should select a channel removed from it by five channels to completely avoid overlap.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Channel Usage** to display the screen shown next.

Wait a moment while the ZyXEL Device compiles the information.

Figure 149 Channel Usage

Status	Association List	Channel Usage	F/W Upload	Configuration	Restart
SSID	MAC Address	Channel	Signal	Network Mode	
ZyXEL_1237	00:13:49:00:00:01	6	23 %	Infra	
ZyXEL	00:13:49:00:00:05	6	82 %	Infra	
Wireless	00:A0:C5:00:07:77	6	42 %	Infra	
Wireless	00:A0:C5:5C:AF:7A	11	25 %	Infra	
A-3214-G3000	00:A0:C5:F5:02:06	11	22 %	Infra, WEP	
<div>Refresh</div>					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 90 Channel Usage

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	This is the Service Set IDentification name of the AP in an Infrastructure wireless network or wireless station in an Ad-Hoc wireless network. For our purposes, we define an Infrastructure network as a wireless network that uses an AP and an Ad-Hoc network (also known as Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS)) as one that doesn't. See the chapter on wireless configuration for more information on basic service sets (BSS) and extended service sets (ESS).
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of the AP in an Infrastructure wireless network. It is randomly generated (so ignore it) in an Ad-Hoc wireless network.
Channel	This is the index number of the channel currently used by the associated AP in an Infrastructure wireless network or wireless station in an Ad-Hoc wireless network.
Signal	This field displays the strength of the AP's signal. If you must choose a channel that's currently in use, choose one with low signal strength for minimum interference.
Network Mode	"Network mode" in this screen refers to your wireless LAN infrastructure (refer to the Wireless LAN chapter) and security setup.
Refresh	Click Refresh to reload the screen.

19.5 F/W Upload Screen

Find firmware at www.zyxel.com in a file that (usually) uses the system model name with a ".bin" extension, for example "NWA-3160.bin". The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot. See the Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance chapter for upgrading firmware using FTP/TFTP commands.

Click **MAINTENANCE > F/W Upload**. Follow the instructions in this screen to upload firmware to your ZyXEL Device.

Figure 150 Firmware Upload

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 91 Firmware Upload

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse ... to find it.

Table 91 Firmware Upload

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Browse...	Click Browse... to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.

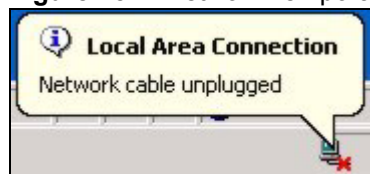


Do not turn off the ZyXEL Device while firmware upload is in progress!

After you see the **Firmware Upload in Process** screen, wait two minutes before logging into the ZyXEL Device again.

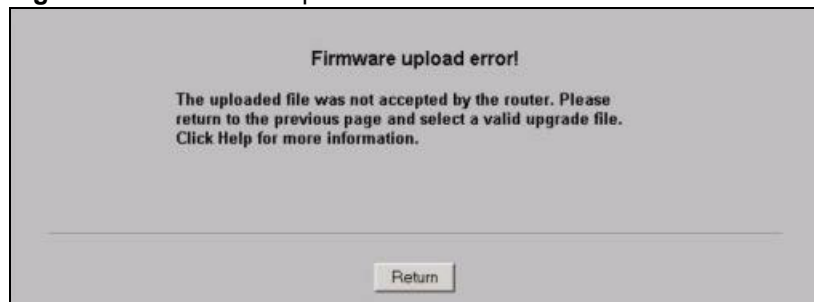
Figure 151 Firmware Upload In Process

The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 152 Network Temporarily Disconnected

After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the **System Status** screen.

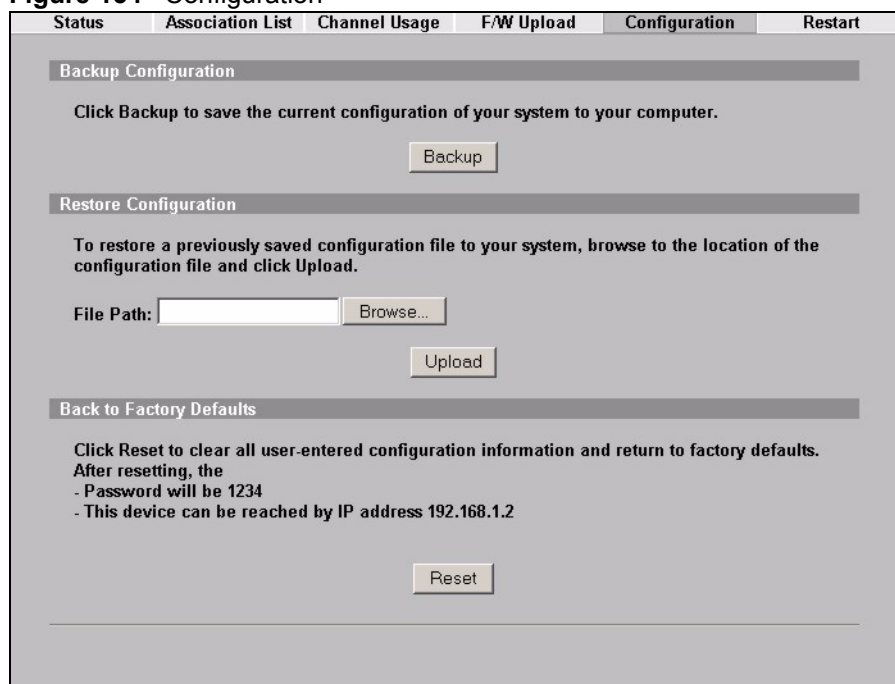
If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **Return** to go back to the **F/W Upload** screen.

Figure 153 Firmware Upload Error

19.6 Configuration Screen

See [Chapter 26 on page 257](#) for information on how to transfer configuration files using FTP/TFTP commands.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Configuration**. Information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration appears as shown next.

Figure 154 Configuration

19.6.1 Backup Configuration

Backup configuration allows you to back up (save) the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your ZyXEL Device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Click **Backup** to save the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to your computer.

19.6.2 Restore Configuration

Restore configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your ZyXEL Device.

Table 92 Restore Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse ... to find it.
Browse...	Click Browse... to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process.



Do not turn off the ZyXEL Device while configuration file upload is in progress.

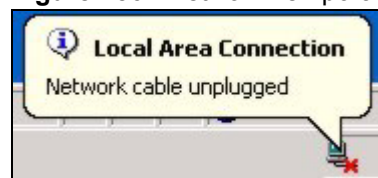
After you see a “restore configuration successful” screen, you must then wait one minute before logging into the ZyXEL Device again.

Figure 155 Configuration Upload Successful



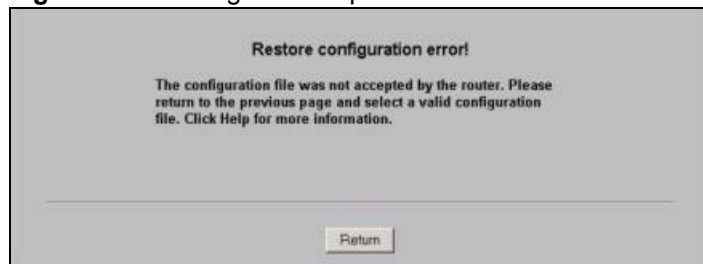
The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 156 Network Temporarily Disconnected



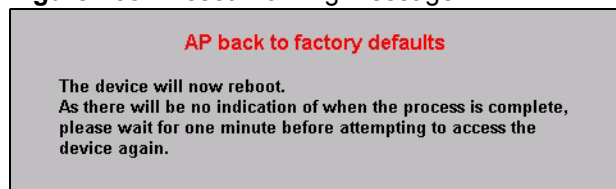
If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default ZyXEL Device IP address (192.168.1.2). See your Quick Start Guide for details on how to set up your computer's IP address.

If the upload was not successful, the following screen will appear. Click **Return** to go back to the **Configuration** screen.

Figure 157 Configuration Upload Error

19.6.3 Back to Factory Defaults

Pressing the **Reset** button in this section clears all user-entered configuration information and returns the ZyXEL Device to its factory defaults as shown on the screen. The following warning screen will appear.

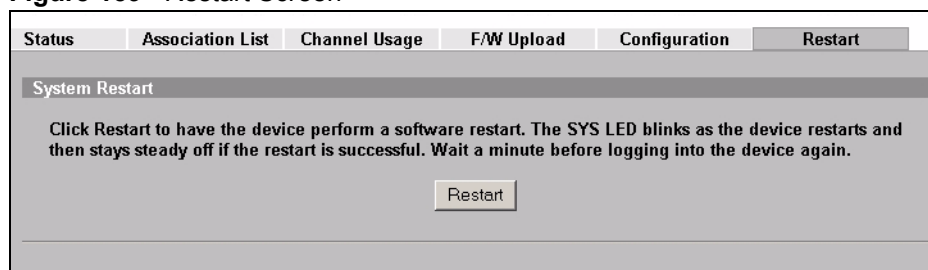
Figure 158 Reset Warning Message

You can also press the **RESET** button to reset your ZyXEL Device to its factory default settings. Refer to [Section 2.2 on page 44](#) for more information.

19.7 Restart Screen

System restart allows you to reboot the ZyXEL Device without turning the power off.

Click **MAINTENANCE > Restart**. Click **Restart** to have the ZyXEL Device reboot. This does not affect the ZyXEL Device's configuration.

Figure 159 Restart Screen

PART III

SMT,

Troubleshooting and Specifications

Introducing the SMT (237)

General Setup (243)

LAN Setup (245)

SNMP Configuration (247)

System Password (249)

System Information and Diagnosis (251)

Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance (257)

System Maintenance and Information (263)

Troubleshooting (271)

Product Specifications (277)

Introducing the SMT

This chapter describes how to access the SMT and provides an overview of its menus.



At the time of writing, only the NWA-3165 provides an SMT.

20.1 Introduction to the SMT

The ZyXEL Device's SMT (System Management Terminal) is a menu-driven interface that you can access from a terminal emulator through the console port or over a telnet connection. This chapter shows you how to access the SMT (System Management Terminal) menus, how to navigate the SMT and how to configure SMT menus.

20.2 Accessing the SMT via the Console Port

Use the console port to configure the ZyXEL Device via SMT menus. Connect the PS/2 connector of the console cable to the console port of the ZyXEL Device and the other end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) on your computer.

When configuring using the console port, you need a computer equipped with communications software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100 terminal emulation.
- 9600 Baud.
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, flow control set to none.

20.2.1 Initial Screen

When you turn on your ZyXEL Device, it performs several internal tests.

After the tests, the ZyXEL Device asks you to press [ENTER] to continue, as shown next.

Figure 160 Initial Screen

```

Bootbase Version: V1.05 | 03/23/2007 11:39:53
RAM:Size = 32 Mbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 32608K OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !
FLASH: AMD 32M

ZyNOS Version: V3.60(AAL.0)b1 | 04/13/2007 19:40:56

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
..

Copyright (c) 1994 - 2008 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
initialize ch =0, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =1, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =2, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =3, ethernet address: 06:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =4, ethernet address: 0A:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =5, ethernet address: 0E:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =6, ethernet address: 12:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =7, ethernet address: 16:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =8, ethernet address: 1A:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =9, ethernet address: 1E:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =10, ethernet address: 06:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =11, ethernet address: 0A:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =12, ethernet address: 0E:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =13, ethernet address: 12:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =14, ethernet address: 16:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =15, ethernet address: 1A:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =16, ethernet address: 1E:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =17, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =18, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =19, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =20, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =21, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A8
initialize ch =22, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =23, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =24, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =25, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
initialize ch =26, ethernet address: 00:13:49:DF:42:A9
Press ENTER to continue...

```

20.2.2 Entering the Password

The login screen appears after you press [ENTER], prompting you to enter the password, as shown below.

For your first login, enter the default password “1234”. As you type the password, the screen displays an “X” for each character you type.



Whether or not you use administrator authentication on RADIUS, you still use the local system password to log in via the console port.

Please note that if there is no activity for longer than five minutes after you log in, your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out and display a blank screen. If you see a blank screen, press [ENTER] to bring up the login screen again.

Figure 161 Password Screen

Enter Password : XXXX

20.3 Connect to your ZyXEL Device Using Telnet

The following procedure details how to telnet into your ZyXEL Device.

- 1 In Windows, click **Start** (usually in the bottom left corner), **Run** and then type “telnet 192.168.1.2” (the default IP address) and click **OK**.
- 2 For your first login, enter the default password “1234”. As you type the password, the screen displays an asterisk “*” for each character you type.

Figure 162 Login Screen

Password : xxxx

- 3 After entering the password you will see the main menu.

Please note that if there is no activity for longer than five minutes (default timeout period) after you log in, your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out. You will then have to telnet into the ZyXEL Device again. You can use the web configurator or the CI commands to change the inactivity time out period.

20.4 Changing the System Password

Change the ZyXEL Device’s default password by following the steps shown next.

- 1 From the main menu, enter “23” to display **Menu 23 – System Password**.
- 2 Type your existing system password in the **Old Password** field, and press [ENTER].

Figure 163 Menu 23 System Password

Menu 23 - System Password

Old Password= ****

New Password= ?

Retype to confirm= ?

Enter here to CONFIRM or ESC to CANCEL:

- 3 Type your new system password in the **New Password** field (up to 30 characters), and press [ENTER].
- 4 Re-type your new system password in the **Retype to confirm** field for confirmation and press [ENTER].

Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk “*” for each character you type.

20.5 SMT Menu Overview Example

The following table gives you an overview of your ZyXEL Device’s various SMT menus.

Table 93 SMT Menus Overview

MENUS	SUB MENUS	
1 General Setup		
3 LAN Setup	3.2 TCP/IP Setup	
22 SNMP Configuration (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)		
23 System Password		
24 System Maintenance	24.1 System Status	
	24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed	24.2.1 System Information
		24.2.2 Console Port Speed
	24.3 Log and Trace	
	24.4 Diagnostic	
	24.8 Command Interpreter Mode	
	24.10 Time and Date Setting	
	24.11 Remote Management Setup	

20.6 Navigating the SMT Interface

The SMT (System Management Terminal) is the interface that you use to configure your ZyXEL Device.

Several operations that you should be familiar with before you attempt to modify the configuration are listed in the table below.

Table 94 Main Menu Commands

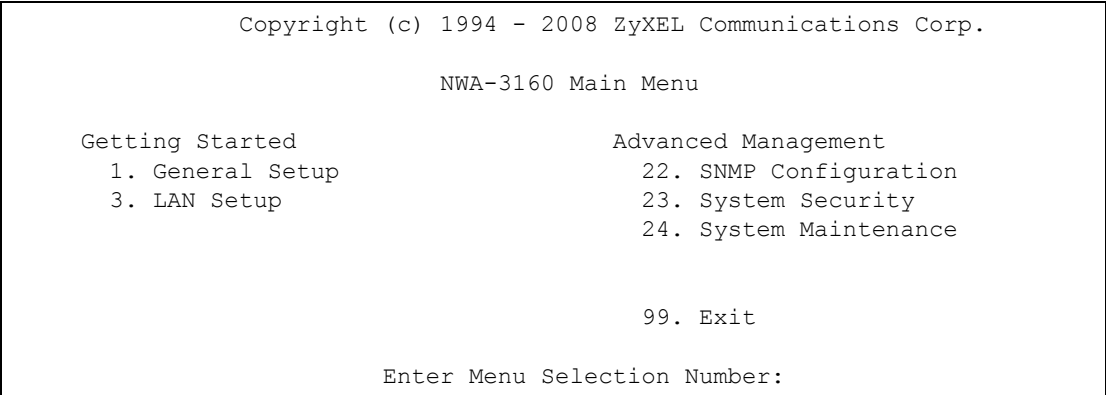
OPERATION	KEYSTROKE	DESCRIPTION
Move down to another menu	[ENTER]	To move forward to a submenu, type in the number of the desired submenu and press [ENTER].
Move up to a previous menu	[ESC]	Press [ESC] to move back to the previous menu.
Move to a "hidden" menu	Press [SPACE BAR] to change No to Yes then press [ENTER].	Fields beginning with "Edit" lead to hidden menus and have a default setting of No . Press [SPACE BAR] once to change No to Yes , then press [ENTER] to go to the "hidden" menu.
Move the cursor	[ENTER] or [UP]/[DOWN] arrow keys.	Within a menu, press [ENTER] to move to the next field. You can also use the [UP]/[DOWN] arrow keys to move to the previous and the next field, respectively.
Entering information	Type in or press [SPACE BAR], then press [ENTER].	You need to fill in two types of fields. The first requires you to type in the appropriate information. The second allows you to cycle through the available choices by pressing [SPACE BAR].
Required fields	<?> or ChangeMe	All fields with the symbol <?> must be filled in order to be able to save the new configuration. All fields with ChangeMe must not be left blank in order to be able to save the new configuration.
N/A fields	<N/A>	Some of the fields in the SMT will show a <N/A>. This symbol refers to an option that is Not Applicable.
Save your configuration	[ENTER]	Save your configuration by pressing [ENTER] at the message "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel". Saving the data on the screen will take you, in most cases to the previous menu.
Exit the SMT	Type "99", then press [ENTER].	Type 99 at the main menu prompt and press [ENTER] to exit the SMT interface.

After you enter the password, the SMT displays the main menu, as shown next.



Not all fields are available in all models.

Figure 164 SMT Main Menu



20.6.1 System Management Terminal Interface Summary

Table 95 Main Menu Summary

#	MENU TITLE	DESCRIPTION
1	General Setup	Use this menu to set up your general information.
3	LAN Setup	Use this menu to set up your LAN and WLAN connection.
22	SNMP Configuration	Use this menu to set up SNMP related parameters (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only).
23	System Password	Use this menu to change your password.
24	System Maintenance	This menu provides system status, diagnostics, software upload, etc.
99	Exit	Use this to exit the SMT.

General Setup

The chapter shows you the information on general setup.

21.1 General Setup

Menu 1 – General Setup contains administrative and system-related information (shown next). The **System Name** field is for identification purposes.

The **Domain Name** entry is what is propagated to the DHCP clients on the LAN. While you must enter the host name (System Name) on each individual computer, the domain name can be assigned from the ZyXEL Device via DHCP.

21.1.1 Procedure To Configure Menu 1

Enter “1” in the Main Menu to open **Menu 1 – General Setup** as shown next.

Figure 165 Menu 1 General Setup

```

Menu 1 - General Setup

System Name= NWA-Series
Domain Name=
First System DNS Server= None
    IP Address= N/A
Second System DNS Server= None
    IP Address= N/A
Third System DNS Server= None
    IP Address= N/A
  
```

Fill in the required fields. Refer to the following table for more information about these fields.

Table 96 Menu 1 General Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes “-” and underscores “_” are accepted.
Domain Name	This is not a required field. Leave this field blank or enter the domain name here if you know it.
First/Second/Third System DNS Server	Press [SPACE BAR] to select From DHCP , User Defined or None and press [ENTER]. These fields are not available on all models.

Table 96 Menu 1 General Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
IP Address	Enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers. This field is available when you select User-Defined in the field above.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to Confirm..." to save your configuration, or press [ESC] at any time to cancel.	

LAN Setup

This chapter shows you how to configure the LAN on your ZyXEL Device.

22.1 LAN Setup

This section describes how to configure the Ethernet using **Menu 3 – LAN Setup**. From the main menu, enter “3” to display menu 3.

Figure 166 Menu 3 LAN Setup

```
Menu 3 - LAN Setup

2. TCP/IP Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:
```

Detailed explanation about the LAN Setup menu is given in the next chapter.

22.2 TCP/IP Ethernet Setup

Use menu 3.2 to configure your ZyXEL Device for TCP/IP.

To edit menu 3.2, enter “3” from the main menu to display **Menu 3-LAN Setup**. When menu 3 appears, type “2” and press [ENTER] to display **Menu 3.2-TCP/IP Setup**, as shown next:

Figure 167 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup

```
Menu 3.2 - TCP/IP Setup
IP Address Assignment= Static
IP Address= 192.168.1.2
IP Subnet Mask= 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address= 0.0.0.0
```

Follow the instructions in the following table on how to configure the fields in this menu.

Table 97 Menu 3.2 TCP/IP Setup

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
IP Address Assignment	Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to select Dynamic to have the ZyXEL Device obtain an IP address from a DHCP server. You must know the IP address assigned to the ZyXEL Device (by the DHCP server) to access the ZyXEL Device again. Select Static to give the ZyXEL Device a fixed, unique IP address. Enter a subnet mask appropriate to your network and the gateway IP address if applicable.
IP Address	Enter the (LAN) IP address of your ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation
IP Subnet Mask	Your ZyXEL Device will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device.
Gateway IP Address	Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your ZyXEL Device that will forward the packet to the destination. On the LAN, the gateway must be a router on the same network segment as your ZyXEL Device.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to Confirm..." to save your configuration, or press [ESC] at any time to cancel.	

SNMP Configuration

This chapter explains SNMP Configuration menu 22. See the web configurator chapter on SNMP for background information.



This menu is available in the NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only.

23.1 SNMP Configuration

To configure SNMP, select option 22 from the main menu to open **Menu 22 – SNMP Configuration** as shown next. The “community” for Get, Set and Trap fields is SNMP terminology for password.

Figure 168 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

```

Menu 22 - SNMP Configuration

SNMP:
  Get Community= public
  Set Community= public
  Trusted Host= 0.0.0.0
  Trap:
    Community= public
    Destination= 0.0.0.0

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the SNMP configuration parameters.

Table 98 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
SNMP:	
Get Community	Type the Get Community , which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext requests from the management station.
Set Community	Type the Set Community , which is the password for incoming Set requests from the management station.
Trusted Host	If you enter a trusted host, your ZyXEL Device will only respond to SNMP messages from this address. A blank (default) field means your ZyXEL Device will respond to all SNMP messages it receives, regardless of source.

Table 98 Menu 22 SNMP Configuration

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Trap:	
Community	Type the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager.
Destination	Type the IP address of the station to send your SNMP traps to.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel" to save your configuration or press [ESC] to cancel and go back to the previous screen.	

System Password

This chapter describes how to configure the ZyXEL Device's system password.

24.1 System Password

You can configure the system password in this menu. Refer to [Section 20.4 on page 239](#).

Figure 169 Menu 23 System Password

<p>Menu 23 - System Password</p> <p>Old Password= ? New Password= ? Retype to confirm= ?</p> <p>Enter here to CONFIRM or ESC to CANCEL:</p>

You should change the default password. If you forget your password you have to restore the default configuration file. Refer to [Section 2.2 on page 44](#).

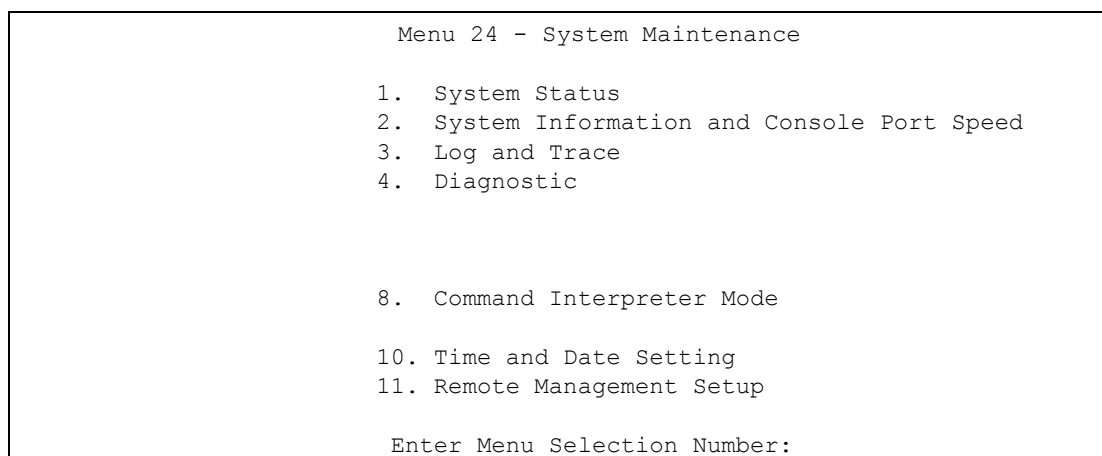
System Information and Diagnosis

This chapter covers the information and diagnostic tools in SMT menus 24.1 to 24.4.

These tools include updates on system status, port status, log and trace capabilities and upgrades for the system software. This chapter describes how to use these tools in detail.

Type “24” in the main menu and press [ENTER] to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 170 Menu 24 System Maintenance



25.1 System Status

The first selection, **System Status** gives you information on the status and statistics of the ports, as shown next. **System Status** is a tool that can be used to monitor your ZyXEL Device. Specifically, it gives you information on your Ethernet and Wireless LAN status, and the number of packets sent and received.

To get to System Status, type “24” to go to **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**. From this menu, type “1”. There are two commands in **Menu 24.1 – System Maintenance – Status**. Entering 9 resets the counters; pressing [ESC] takes you back to the previous screen.

The following table describes the fields present in **Menu 24.1 – System Maintenance – Status** which are read-only and meant for diagnostic purposes.

Figure 171 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status

Menu 24.1 - System Maintenance - Status							00:15:06
							Sat. Jan. 01, 2000
Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Cols	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
Ethernet	100M/Full	761	366	0	305	192	0:15:01
WLAN1	54M	515	0	0	64	0	0:15:04
WLAN2	Down	0	0	0	0	0	0:00:00
Port	Ethernet Address		IP Address		IP Mask		DHCP
Ethernet	00:19:CB:1C:08:2A		192.168.1.2		255.255.255.0		None
WLAN1	00:19:CB:1C:08:2A						
WLAN2	00:00:00:00:00:00						
System up Time: 0:15:09							
ZyNOS F/W Version: V3.60(AAL.0)b1 04/13/2007							
Name: NWA-Series							
Press Command:							
COMMANDS: 9-Reset Counters ESC-Exit							

The following table describes the fields present in this menu.

Table 99 Menu 24.1 System Maintenance: Status

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port type. Port types are: Ethernet, WLAN1 and WLAN2. WLAN2 is not supported.
Status	This shows the status of the remote node.
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets to this remote node.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets from this remote node.
Cols	This is the number of collisions on this connection.
Tx B/s	This shows the transmission rate in bytes per second.
Rx B/s	This shows the receiving rate in bytes per second.
Up Time	This is the time this channel has been connected to the current remote node.
Ethernet Address	This shows the MAC address of the port.
IP Address	This shows the IP address of the network device connected to the port.
IP Mask	This shows the subnet mask of the network device connected to the port.
DHCP	This shows the DHCP setting (None or Client) for the port.
System Up Time	This is the time the ZyXEL Device is up and running from the last reboot.
ZyNOS F/W Version	Refers to the ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) system firmware version. ZyNOS is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.
Name	This displays the device name.

25.2 System Information

To get to the System Information:

- 1 Enter “24” to display **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 Enter “2” to display **Menu 24.2 – System Information and Console Port Speed**.
- 3 From this menu you have two choices as shown in the next figure:

Figure 172 Menu 24.2 System Information and Console Port Speed

```

Menu 24.2 - System Information and Console Port Speed
  1. System Information
  2. Console Port Speed

Please enter selection:

```



The ZyXEL Device also has an internal console port for support personnel only. Do not open the ZyXEL Device as it will void your warranty.

25.2.1 System Information

Enter “1” in menu 24.2 to display the screen shown next.

Figure 173 Menu 24.2.1 System Information: Information

```

Menu 24.2.1 - System Maintenance - Information

Name: NWA-Series
Routing: BRIDGE
ZyNOS F/W Version: V3.60(AAL.0)b1 | 04/13/2007
Country Code:

LAN
Ethernet Address: 00:19:CB:1C:08:2A
IP Address: 192.168.1.2
IP Mask: 255.255.255.0
DHCP: None

Press ESC or RETURN to Exit:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 100 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Name	Displays the system name of your ZyXEL Device. This information can be changed in Menu 1 – General Setup .
Routing	Refers to the routing protocol used.

Table 100 Menu 24.2.1 System Maintenance: Information

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
ZyNOS F/W Version	Refers to the ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) system firmware version. ZyNOS is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.
Country Code	Refers to the country code of the firmware.
LAN	
Ethernet Address	Refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) of your ZyXEL Device.
IP Address	This is the IP address of the ZyXEL Device in dotted decimal notation.
IP Mask	This shows the subnet mask of the ZyXEL Device.
DHCP	This field shows the DHCP setting of the ZyXEL Device.
When you have completed this menu, press [ENTER] at the prompt "Press ENTER to confirm or ESC to cancel" to save your configuration or press [ESC] to cancel and go back to the previous screen.	

25.2.2 Console Port Speed

You can set up different port speeds for the console port through **Menu 24.2.2 – System Maintenance – Console Port Speed**. Your ZyXEL Device supports 9600 (default), 19200, 38400, 57600 and 115200 bps console port speeds. Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to select the desired speed in menu 24.2.2, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 174 Menu 24.2.2 System Maintenance: Change Console Port Speed

```

Menu 24.2.2 - System Maintenance - Change Console Port Speed

      Console Port Speed: 9600

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

After you changed your ZyXEL Device's console port speed, you must also make the same change to the console port speed parameter of your communication software.

25.3 Log and Trace

Your ZyXEL Device provides error logs and trace records that are stored locally.

25.3.1 Viewing Error Log

The first place you should look for clues when something goes wrong is the error log. Follow the procedures to view the local error/trace log:

- 1 Type "24" in the main menu to display **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 From menu 24, type "3" to display **Menu 24.3 – System Maintenance – Log and Trace**.

Figure 175 Menu 24.3 System Maintenance: Log and Trace

```

Menu 24.3 - System Maintenance - Log and Trace
1. View Error Log
Please enter selection:

```

- 3** Enter 1 from **Menu 24.3 – System Maintenance – Log and Trace** and press [ENTER] twice to display the error log in the system.

After the ZyXEL Device finishes displaying the error log, you will have the option to clear it. Samples of typical error and information messages are presented in the next figure.

Figure 176 Sample Error and Information Messages

```

55 Sat Jan 1 00:00:00 2000 PP05 ERROR Wireless LAN init fail, code=-1
56 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PP07 INFO LAN promiscuous mode <1>
57 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PINI INFO Last errorlog repeat 1 Times
58 Sat Jan 1 00:00:01 2000 PINI INFO main: init completed
59 Sat Jan 1 00:00:02 2000 PP05 -WARN SNMP TRAP 3: link up
60 Sat Jan 1 00:00:30 2000 PSSV -WARN SNMP TRAP 0: cold start
61 Sat Jan 1 00:01:38 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session Begin
62 Sat Jan 1 00:06:44 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session End
63 Sat Jan 1 00:11:13 2000 PINI INFO SMT Session Begin
Clear Error Log (y/n):

```

25.4 Diagnostic

The diagnostic facility allows you to test the different aspects of your ZyXEL Device to determine if it is working properly. Menu 24.4 allows you to choose among various types of diagnostic tests to evaluate your system, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 177 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance: Diagnostic

```

Menu 24.4 - System Maintenance - Diagnostic

TCP/IP
1. Ping Host
2. DHCP Release
3. DHCP Renewal

System
11. Reboot System

Enter Menu Selection Number:
Host IP Address= N/A

```

Follow the procedure next to display this menu:

- 1** From the main menu, type “24” to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2** From this menu, type “4” to open **Menu 24.4 – System Maintenance – Diagnostic**.

The following table describes the diagnostic tests available in menu 24.4 for your ZyXEL Device and the connections.

Table 101 Menu 24.4 System Maintenance Menu: Diagnostic

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Ping Host	Ping the host to see if the links and TCP/IP protocol on both systems are working.
DHCP Release	Release the IP address assigned by the DHCP server.
DHCP Renewal	Get a new IP address from the DHCP server.
Reboot System	Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
Host IP Address	If you typed "1" to Ping Host, now type the address of the computer you want to ping.

Firmware and Configuration File Maintenance

This chapter tells you how to backup and restore your configuration file as well as upload new firmware and configuration files using the SMT screens.

26.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (often called the romfile or rom-0) contains the factory default settings in the menus such as password and TCP/IP Setup, etc. It arrives from ZyXEL with a rom filename extension. Once you have customized the ZyXEL Device's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the “ras” file) is the system firmware and has a “bin” filename extension. With many FTP and TFTP clients, the filenames are similar to those seen next.

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file " firmware.bin" to the ZyXEL Device.

```
ftp> get rom-0 config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to the computer file config.cfg.

If your [T]FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the ZyXEL Device only recognizes “rom-0” and “ras”. Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

The following table is a summary. Please note that the internal filename refers to the filename on the ZyXEL Device and the external filename refers to the filename not on the ZyXEL Device, that is, on your computer, local network or FTP site and so the name (but not the extension) will vary. After uploading new firmware see the **ZyNOS F/W Version** field in **Menu 24.2.1 – System Maintenance – Information** to confirm that you have uploaded the correct firmware version.

Table 102 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	Rom-0	*.rom	This is the configuration filename on the ZyXEL Device. Uploading the rom-0 file replaces the entire ROM file system, including your ZyXEL Device configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	Ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the ZyXEL Device.

26.2 Backup Configuration

Backup is highly recommended once your ZyXEL Device is functioning properly. FTP is the preferred method, although TFTP can also be used.

Please note that the terms “download” and “upload” are relative to the computer. Download means to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, while upload means from your computer to the ZyXEL Device.

26.2.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter “open” and the IP address of your ZyXEL Device.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter “root” and your SMT password as requested. The default is 1234.
- 5 Enter “bin” to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use “get” to transfer files from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, for example, “get rom-0 config.rom” transfers the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device to your computer and renames it “config.rom”. See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter “quit” to exit the FTP prompt.

Figure 178 FTP Session Example

```

331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> get rom-0 zyxel.rom
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras
226 File received OK
ftp: 327680 bytes sent in 1.10Seconds
297.89Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit

```

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in third party FTP clients.

Table 103 General Commands for Third Party FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

26.2.2 Backup Configuration Using TFTP

The ZyXEL Device supports the up/downloading of the firmware and the configuration file using TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) over LAN. Although TFTP should work over WAN as well, it is not recommended.

To use TFTP, your computer must have both telnet and TFTP clients. To backup the configuration file, follow the procedure shown next:

- 1 Use telnet from your computer to connect to the ZyXEL Device and log in. Because TFTP does not have any security checks, the ZyXEL Device records the IP address of the telnet client and accepts TFTP requests only from this address.
- 2 Put the SMT in command interpreter (CI) mode by entering 8 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 3 Enter command “sys stdio 0” to disable the SMT timeout, so the TFTP transfer will not be interrupted. Enter command “sys stdio 5” to restore the five-minute SMT timeout (default) when the file transfer is complete.
- 4 Launch the TFTP client on your computer and connect to the ZyXEL Device. Set the transfer mode to binary before starting data transfer.

- 5 Use the TFTP client (see the example below) to transfer files between the ZyXEL Device and the computer. The file name for the configuration file is `rom-0` (rom-zero, not capital o).

Note that the telnet connection must be active and the SMT in CI mode before and during the TFTP transfer. For details on TFTP commands (see following example), please consult the documentation of your TFTP client program. For UNIX, use “get” to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer and “binary” to set binary transfer mode.

26.2.3 Example: TFTP Command

The following is an example TFTP command:

```
TFTP [-i] host get rom-0 config.rom
```

where “i” specifies binary image transfer mode (use this mode when transferring binary files), “host” is the ZyXEL Device IP address, “get” transfers the file source on the ZyXEL Device (rom-0 name of the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device) to the file destination on the computer and renames it config.rom.

The following table describes some of the fields that you may see in third party TFTP clients.

Table 104 General Commands for Third Party TFTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host	Enter the IP address of the ZyXEL Device. 192.168.1.2 is the ZyXEL Device's default IP address when shipped.
Send/Fetch	Use “Send” to upload the file to the ZyXEL Device and “Fetch” to back up the file on your computer.
Local File	Enter the path and name of the firmware file (*.bin extension) or configuration file (*.rom extension) on your computer.
Remote File	This is the filename on the ZyXEL Device. The filename for the firmware is “ras” and for the configuration file, is “rom-0”.
Binary	Transfer the file in binary mode.
Abort	Stop transfer of the file.

26.3 Restore Configuration

You can restore the configuration via FTP or TFTP to your ZyXEL Device. The preferred method is FTP. Note that this function erases the current configuration before restoring the previous backup configuration; please do not attempt to restore unless you have a backup configuration stored on disk. To restore configuration using FTP or TFTP is the same as uploading the configuration file, please refer to the following sections on FTP and TFTP file transfer for more details. The ZyXEL Device restarts automatically after the file transfer is complete.

26.3.1 Using the FTP command from the DOS Prompt Example

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter “open” and the IP address of your ZyXEL Device.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.

- 4 Enter “root” and your SMT password as requested. The default is 1234.
- 5 Enter “bin” to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use “put” to transfer files from the computer to the ZyXEL Device for example “put firmware.bin ras” transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the ZyXEL Device and renames it “ras”. Similarly “put config.rom rom-0” transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.rom) to the ZyXEL Device and renames it “rom-0”. Likewise “get rom-0 config.rom” transfers the configuration file on the ZyXEL Device to your computer and renames it “config.rom.” See earlier in this chapter for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter “quit” to exit the FTP prompt.

Figure 179 FTP Session Example

```

331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR ras
226 File received OK
ftp: 327680 bytes sent in 1.10Seconds
297.89Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit

```

More commands that you may find in third party FTP clients are listed earlier in this chapter.

26.3.2 TFTP File Upload

The ZyXEL Device also supports the up/downloading of the firmware and the configuration file using TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) over LAN. Although TFTP should work over WAN as well, it is not recommended.

To use TFTP, your computer must have both telnet and TFTP clients. To transfer the firmware and the configuration file, follow the procedure shown next:

- 1 Use telnet from your computer to connect to the ZyXEL Device and log in. Because TFTP does not have any security checks, the ZyXEL Device records the IP address of the telnet client and accepts TFTP requests only from this address.
- 2 Put the SMT in command interpreter (CI) mode by entering 8 in **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 3 Enter the command “sys stdio 0” to disable the SMT timeout, so the TFTP transfer will not be interrupted. Enter command “sys stdio 5” to restore the five-minute SMT timeout (default) when the file transfer is complete.
- 4 Launch the TFTP client on your computer and connect to the ZyXEL Device. Set the transfer mode to binary before starting data transfer.
- 5 Use the TFTP client (see the example below) to transfer files between the ZyXEL Device and the computer. The file name for the firmware is “ras” and the configuration file is “rom-0” (rom-zero, not capital o).

Note that the telnet connection must be active and the SMT in CI mode before and during the TFTP transfer. For details on TFTP commands (see following example), please consult the documentation of your TFTP client program. For UNIX, use “get” to transfer from the ZyXEL Device to the computer, “put” the other way around, and “binary” to set binary transfer mode.

26.3.3 Example: TFTP Command

The following is an example TFTP command:

```
TFTP [-i] host put firmware.bin ras
```

where “i” specifies binary image transfer mode (use this mode when transferring binary files), “host” is the ZyXEL Device’s IP address, “put” transfers the file source on the computer (firmware.bin – name of the firmware on the computer) to the file destination on the remote host (ras - name of the firmware on the ZyXEL Device).

Commands that you may see in third party TFTP clients are listed earlier in this chapter.

System Maintenance and Information

This chapter leads you through SMT menus 24.8 and 24.10.

27.1 Command Interpreter Mode

The Command Interpreter (CI) is a part of the main system firmware. The CI provides much of the same functionality as the SMT, while adding some low-level setup and diagnostic functions. Enter the CI from the SMT by selecting menu 24.8. See the included disk or the zyxel.com web site for more detailed information on CI commands. Enter 8 from **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**. A list of valid commands can be found by typing `help` or `?` at the command prompt. Type “exit” to return to the SMT main menu when finished.



Use of undocumented commands or misconfiguration can damage the unit and possibly render it unusable.

Figure 180 Menu 24 System Maintenance

```
Menu 24 - System Maintenance

1.  System Status
2.  System Information and Console Port Speed
3.  Log and Trace
4.  Diagnostic

8.  Command Interpreter Mode

10. Time and Date Setting
11. Remote Management Setup

Enter Menu Selection Number:
```



Not all commands are available in all models.

Figure 181 Valid CI Commands

```
Copyright (c) 1994 - 2008 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
NWA-3160> help or ?
Valid commands are:
sys          exit          ether          wlan
ip           bridge        bm            certificates
radius       8021x         radserv       wcfg
rogueAP
NWA-3160>
```

27.1.1 Command Syntax

- The command keywords are in `courier new` font.
- Enter the command keywords exactly as shown, do not abbreviate.
- The required fields in a command are enclosed in angle brackets `<>`.
- The optional fields in a command are enclosed in square brackets `[]`.
- The `|` symbol means or.

For example,

`sys filter netbios config <type> <on|off>`

means that you must specify the type of netbios filter and whether to turn it on or off.

27.1.2 Command Usage

A list of valid commands can be found by typing `help` or `?` at the command prompt. Always type the full command. Type `exit` to return to the SMT main menu when finished.

27.1.3 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection

The following describes the commands for enabling, disabling and configuring the brute-force password guessing protection mechanism for the password.

Table 105 Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<code>sys pwdertrtm</code>	This command displays the brute-force guessing password protection settings.
<code>sys pwdertrtm 0</code>	This command turns off the password's protection from brute-force guessing. The brute-force password guessing protection is turned off by default.
<code>sys pwdertrtm N</code>	This command sets the password protection to block all access attempts for N (a number from 1 to 60) minutes after the third time an incorrect password is entered.

27.1.3.1 Configuring Brute-Force Password Guessing Protection: Example

```
sys pwdertrtm 5
```

This command sets the password protection to block all access attempts for five minutes after the third time an incorrect password is entered.

27.2 Time and Date Setting

The ZyXEL Device keeps track of the time and date. There is also a software mechanism to set the time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your ZyXEL Device. Menu 24.10 allows you to update the time and date settings of your ZyXEL Device. The updated time is then displayed in the ZyXEL Device error logs.

- 1 Select menu 24 in the main menu to open **Menu 24 – System Maintenance**.
- 2 Then enter 10 to go to **Menu 24.10 – System Maintenance – Time and Date Setting** to update the time and date settings of your ZyXEL Device as shown in the following screen.

Figure 182 Menu 24.10 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

```

Menu 24.10 - System Maintenance - Time and Date Setting

Time Protocol= Manual
Time Server Address= N/A

Current Time:                00 : 33 : 03
New Time (hh:mm:ss):        00 : 32 : 51

Current Date:                2000 - 01 - 01
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd):      2000 - 01 - 01

Time Zone= GMT

Daylight Saving= No
Start Date (mm-nth-week-hr): Jan. - 1st - Sun.(02) - 00
End Date (mm-nth-week-hr):  Jan. - 1st - Sun.(02) - 00

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 106 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Time Protocol	Enter the time service protocol that your time server sends when you turn on the ZyXEL Device. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to check with your ISP/network administrator or use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the format. Daytime (RFC 867) format is day/month/year/time zone of the server. Time (RFC-868) format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. NTP (RFC-1305) is similar to Time (RFC-868) . Manual . The default, enter the time manually.
Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Current Time	This field displays an updated time only when you reenter this menu.

Table 106 System Maintenance: Time and Date Setting

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
New Time	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format.
Current Date	This field displays an updated date only when you re-enter this menu.
New Date	Enter the new date in year, month and day format.
Time Zone	Press [SPACE BAR] and then [ENTER] to set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Daylight Saving	If you use daylight savings time, then choose Yes .
Start Date	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected Yes in the Daylight Saving field. The hr field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Second, Sunday, March and 2:00.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Mar., Last, Sun. The time you type in the hr field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
End Date	<p>Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected Yes in the Daylight Saving field. The hr field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First, Sunday, November and 2:00.</p> <p>Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Oct., Last, Sun. The time you type in the hr field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 02 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).</p>
Once you have filled in this menu, press [ENTER] at the message "Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel" to save your configuration, or press [ESC] to cancel.	

27.2.1 Resetting the Time

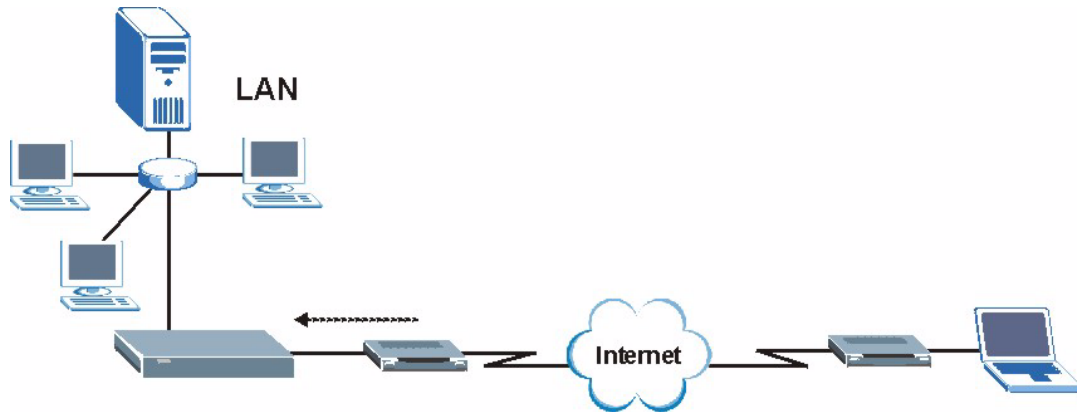
The ZyXEL Device resets the time in three instances:

- 1 On leaving menu 24.10 after making changes.
- 2 When the ZyXEL Device starts up, if there is a timeserver configured in menu 24.10.
- 3 24-hour intervals after starting.

27.3 Remote Management Setup

27.3.1 Telnet

You can configure your ZyXEL Device for remote Telnet access as shown next.

Figure 183 Telnet Configuration on a TCP/IP Network

27.3.2 FTP

You can upload and download ZyXEL Device firmware and configuration files using FTP. To use this feature, your computer must have an FTP client.

27.3.3 Web

You can use the ZyXEL Device's embedded web configurator for configuration and file management. See the online help for details.

27.3.4 Remote Management Setup

Remote management setup is for managing Telnet, FTP and Web services. You can customize the service port, access interface and the secured client IP address to enhance security and flexibility.

You can manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

Internet (**WLAN only**), the **LAN only**, **All** (LAN and WLAN) or **Disable** (neither).



If you enable remote management of a service, but have applied a filter to block the service, then you will not be able to remotely manage the service.

Enter "11" from menu 24, to display **Menu 24.11 - Remote Management Control** (shown next)

Figure 184 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

```

Menu 24.11 - Remote Management Control

TELNET Server:      Port = 23          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

FTP Server:         Port = 21          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

SSH Server          Certificate = auto_generated_self-signed-cert
                    Port = 22          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

HTTPS Server:       Certificate = auto_generated_self_signed_cert
                    Authenticate Client Certificates = No
                    Port = 443         Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

HTTP Server:        Port = 80          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

SNMP Service:       Port = 161         Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

DNS Service:        Port = 53          Access = ALL
                    Secure Client IP = 0.0.0.0

Press ENTER to Confirm or ESC to Cancel:

```

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 107 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
TELNET Server: FTP Server: SSH Server: HTTPS Server: HTTP Server: SNMP Service: DNS Service:	Each of these read-only labels denotes a server or service that you may use to remotely manage the ZyXEL Device.
Port	This field shows the port number for the remote management service. You can change the port number for a service if needed, but you must use the same port number to use that service for remote management.
Access	Select the access interface (if any) by pressing the [SPACE BAR]. Choices are: LAN only , WAN only , All or Disable . The default is LAN only .
Secured Client IP	The default 0.0.0.0 allows any client to use this service to remotely manage the ZyXEL Device. Enter an IP address to restrict access to a client with a matching IP address.
Certificate	This field displays the name used to identify this certificate. The ZyXEL Device has an automatically generated self signed certificate by default. The factory default certificate is common to all ZyXEL Device's that use certificates. You can replace the certificate when you log into the ZyXEL Device (see Chapter 2 on page 43) or you can use the Certificates configuration screen (see Chapter 16 on page 183).
Authenticate Client Certificates	Select Yes by pressing [SPACE BAR]. The internal RADIUS server uses one of the certificates listed in the My Certificates screen to authenticate each wireless client. The exact certificate used depends on the certificate information configured on the wireless client.
Once you have filled in this menu, press [ENTER] to save your configuration, or press [ESC] to cancel.	

27.3.5 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management over LAN or WAN will not work when:

- 1** You have disabled that service in menu 24.11.
- 2** The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field (menu 24.11) does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 3** There is already another remote management session of the same type (Telnet, FTP or Web) running. You may only have one remote management session of the same type running at one time.
- 4** There is a web remote management session running with a Telnet session. A Telnet session will be disconnected if you begin a web session; it will not begin if there already is a web session.

27.4 System Timeout

There is a system timeout of five minutes (300 seconds) for Telnet/web/FTP connections. Your ZyXEL Device will automatically log you out if you do nothing in this timeout period, except when it is continuously updating the status in menu 24.1 or when `sys studio` has been changed on the command line.

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs](#)
- [ZyXEL Device Access and Login](#)
- [Internet Access](#)
- [Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting](#)

28.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs



The ZyXEL Device does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

- 1 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the ZyXEL Device.
- 2 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the ZyXEL Device and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.



One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Section 1.7 on page 39](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor to the ZyXEL Device.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

28.2 ZyXEL Device Access and Login



I forgot the IP address for the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 The default IP address is **192.168.1.2**.
- 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the ZyXEL Device by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click **Start > Run**, enter “**cmd**”, and then enter “**ipconfig**”. The IP address of the **Default Gateway** might be the IP address of the ZyXEL Device (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.
- 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 44](#).



I forgot the password.

- 1 The default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 44](#).



I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator.

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
 - The default IP address is 192.168.1.2.
 - If you changed the IP address ([Section 12.3 on page 158](#)), use the new IP address.
 - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I forgot the IP address for the ZyXEL Device](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.7 on page 39](#).
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled. See [Section 28.1 on page 271](#).
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the ZyXEL Device, skip this step.)
 - If there is no DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer’s IP address is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device.
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the ZyXEL Device with the default IP address. See your Quick Start Guide.
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the ZyXEL Device using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the ZyXEL Device, check the remote management settings to find out why the ZyXEL Device does not respond to HTTP.
- If your computer is connected to the **WAN** port or is connected wirelessly, use a computer that is connected to a **LAN/ETHERNET** port.



I can see the Login screen, but I cannot log in to the ZyXEL Device.

- 1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default password is **1234**. This fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You cannot log in to the web configurator while someone is using the SMT or Telnet to access the ZyXEL Device. Log out of the ZyXEL Device in the other session, or ask the person who is logged in to log out.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 2.2 on page 44](#).



I cannot access the SMT.

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.



I cannot access the ZyXEL Device via the console port.

- 1 Check to see if the ZyXEL Device is connected to your computer's console port.
- 2 Check to see if the communications program is configured correctly. The communications software should be configured as follows:
 VT100 terminal emulation.
 9,600 bps is the default speed on leaving the factory. Try other speeds in case the speed has been changed.
 No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, data flow set to none.



I cannot use FTP to upload / download the configuration file. / I cannot use FTP to upload new firmware.

See the troubleshooting suggestions for [I cannot see or access the Login screen in the web configurator](#). Ignore the suggestions about your browser.

28.3 Internet Access



I cannot access the Internet.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 28.1 on page 271](#).
- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure the wireless settings on the wireless client are the same as the settings on the AP.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device, and follow the directions in the Quick Start Guide again.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.



I cannot access the Internet anymore. I had access to the Internet (with the ZyXEL Device), but my Internet connection is not available anymore.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and [Section 1.7 on page 39](#).
- 2 Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
- 3 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.



The Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

- 1 There might be a lot of traffic on the network. Look at the LEDs, and check [Section 1.7 on page 39](#). If the ZyXEL Device is sending or receiving a lot of information, try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications.
- 2 Check the signal strength. If the signal is weak, try moving the ZyXEL Device closer to the AP (if possible), and look around to see if there are any devices that might be interfering with the wireless network (microwaves, other wireless networks, and so on).
- 3 Reboot the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Check the settings for QoS. If it is disabled, you might consider activating it. If it is enabled, you might consider raising or lowering the priority for some applications.

28.4 Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting



I cannot access the ZyXEL Device or ping any computer from the WLAN.

- 1** Make sure the wireless LAN is enabled on the ZyXEL Device
- 2** Make sure the wireless adapter on the wireless station is working properly.
- 3** Make sure the wireless adapter (installed on your computer) is IEEE 802.11 compatible and supports the same wireless standard as the ZyXEL Device.
- 4** Make sure your computer (with a wireless adapter installed) is within the transmission range of the ZyXEL Device.
- 5** Check that both the ZyXEL Device and your wireless station are using the same wireless and wireless security settings.
- 6** Make sure traffic between the WLAN and the LAN is not blocked by the firewall on the ZyXEL Device.
- 7** Make sure you allow the ZyXEL Device to be remotely accessed through the WLAN interface. Check your remote management settings.

Product Specifications

The following tables summarize the ZyXEL Device's hardware and firmware features.

Table 108 Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Dimensions	190x 135 x 40 mm
Weight	NWA-3160: 420g NWA-3163: 420g NWA-3165: 392g
Power	12V DC, 1.5 A max. (There is no tolerance for the DC input voltage.)
Ethernet Ports	Auto-negotiating: 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps in either half-duplex or full-duplex mode. Auto-crossover: Use either crossover or straight-through Ethernet cables.
Power over Ethernet (PoE)	IEEE 802.3af compliant.
Console Port	One MIL-C-5015 style RS-232 console port (PS/2 connector; Mini Din 6-pin)
Antenna Specifications	NWA-3160: Two 2dBi Dual Band (2.4 GHz/5 GHz) attachable dipole antennas. NWA-3163: Two 3dBi 2.4GHz attachable dipole antennas. NWA-3165: Three 1.8dBi embedded dipole antennas

Table 108 Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Output Power	<p>NWA-3160:</p> <p>IEEE 802.11b/g</p> <p>54Mbps: 16dBm</p> <p>24Mbps: 17dBm</p> <p>6Mbps: 18dBm</p> <p>11Mbps: 18dBm</p> <p>IEEE 802.11a</p> <p>54Mbps: 12dBm</p> <p>24Mbps: 12dBm</p> <p>6Mbps: 14dBm</p> <p>11Mbps: 14dBm</p> <p>NWA-3163:</p> <p>IEEE 802.11b/g</p> <p>54Mbps: 20dBm</p> <p>24Mbps: 21dBm</p> <p>11Mbps: 23dBm</p> <p>6Mbps: 23dBm</p> <p>NWA-3165:</p> <p>IEEE 802.11b</p> <p>Using single antenna: 13dBm</p> <p>Using three antennas: 17dBm</p> <p>IEEE 802.11g</p> <p>Using single antenna: 12dBm</p> <p>Using three antennas: 16dBm</p> <p>Error Vector Magnitude (EVM): < -25dBm</p> <p>IEEE 802.11n: HT20</p> <p>Using single antenna: 11dBm</p> <p>Using three antennas: 15dBm</p> <p>Error Vector Magnitude (EVM): < -28dBm</p> <p>IEEE 802.11n: HT40</p> <p>Using single antenna: 7 dBm</p> <p>Using three antennas: 11 dBm</p> <p>Error Vector Magnitude (EVM): < -28dBm</p>
Operating Environment	<p>Temperature: 5° C ~ 50° C</p> <p>Humidity: 10% ~ 90% RH</p>
Storage Environment	<p>Temperature: -25° C ~ 60° C</p> <p>Humidity: 5% ~ 95% RH</p>
Distance between the centers of the holes (for wall mounting) on the device's back.	125 mm
Recommended type of screws for wall-mounting	M4 Tap Screw (included), see Figure 186 on page 281 .

Table 108 Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Approvals	EMC: FCC Class B, CE-EMC Class B, C-Tick Class B, Safety: CSA International, CE EN60950-1
Plenum Rating	The ZyXEL Device's housing is treated with fire-retardant chemicals. In the event of fire, plenum-rated materials burn more slowly and produce less smoke than non-plenum-rated materials, decreasing the quantity of toxic or asphyxiating material produced.

Table 109 Firmware Specifications

Default IP Address	192.168.1.2
Default Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
Default Password	1234
Wireless LAN Standards	NWA-3160: IEEE 802.11a, IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g NWA-3163: IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g NWA-3165: IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g, IEEE 802.11n
Wireless security	WEP, WPA(2), WPA(2)-PSK, 802.1x
Layer 2 isolation	Prevents wireless clients associated with your ZyXEL Device from communicating with other wireless clients, APs, computers or routers in a network.
Multiple BSSID (MBSSID)	MBSSID mode allows the ZyXEL Device to operate up to 8 different wireless networks (BSSs) simultaneously, each with independently-configurable wireless and security settings.
Rogue AP detection (NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)	Rogue AP detection detects and logs unknown access points (APs) operating in the area.
Internal RADIUS server	PEAP, 32-entry Trusted AP list, 128-entry Trusted Users list.
VLAN	802.1Q VLAN tagging.
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a bridge to interact with other (R)STP-compliant bridges in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.
WMM QoS	WMM (Wi-Fi MultiMedia) QoS (Quality of Service) allows you to prioritize wireless traffic.
Certificates	The ZyXEL Device can use certificates (also called digital IDs) to authenticate users. Certificates are based on public-private key pairs. Certificates provide a way to exchange public keys for use in authentication.
SSL Passthrough	SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) uses a public key to encrypt data that's transmitted over an SSL connection. Both Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer support SSL, and many Web sites use the protocol to obtain confidential user information, such as credit card numbers. By convention, URLs that require an SSL connection start with "https" instead of "http". The ZyXEL Device allows SSL connections to take place through the ZyXEL Device.
MAC Address Filter	Your ZyXEL Device checks the MAC address of the wireless station against a list of allowed or denied MAC addresses.

Table 109 Firmware Specifications

Wireless Association List	With the wireless association list, you can see the list of the wireless stations that are currently using the ZyXEL Device to access your wired network.
Logging and Tracing	Built-in message logging and packet tracing.
Embedded FTP and TFTP Servers	The embedded FTP and TFTP servers enable fast firmware upgrades as well as configuration file backups and restoration.
Auto Configuration	Administrators can use text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings for multiple APs. The AP can automatically get a configuration file from a TFTP server at start up or after renewing DHCP client information.
SNMP	SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your ZyXEL Device supports SNMP agent functionality, which allows a manager station to manage and monitor the ZyXEL Device through the network. The ZyXEL Device supports SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and version two c (SNMPv2c). The NWA-3165 also supports version 3 (SNMPv3).
DFS (NWA-3160 only)	DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) allows a wider choice of 802.11a wireless channels.
CAPWAP (Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points - NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 only)	The NWA-3160 and NWA-3163 support CAPWAP, allowing multiple APs to be configured and managed by a single AP controller. At the time of writing, only the NWA-3160 can be an AP controller.

Wall-mounting Instructions

Complete the following steps to hang your ZyXEL Device on a wall.



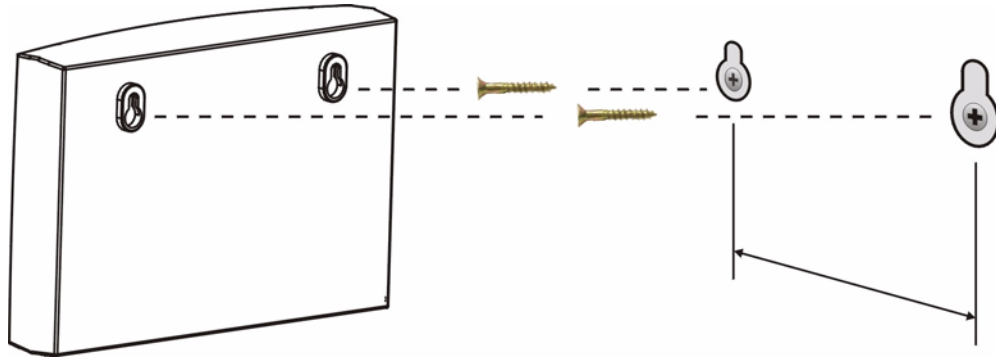
See [Table 108 on page 277](#) for the size of screws to use and how far apart to place them.

- 1 Select a position free of obstructions on a sturdy wall.
- 2 Drill two holes for the screws.

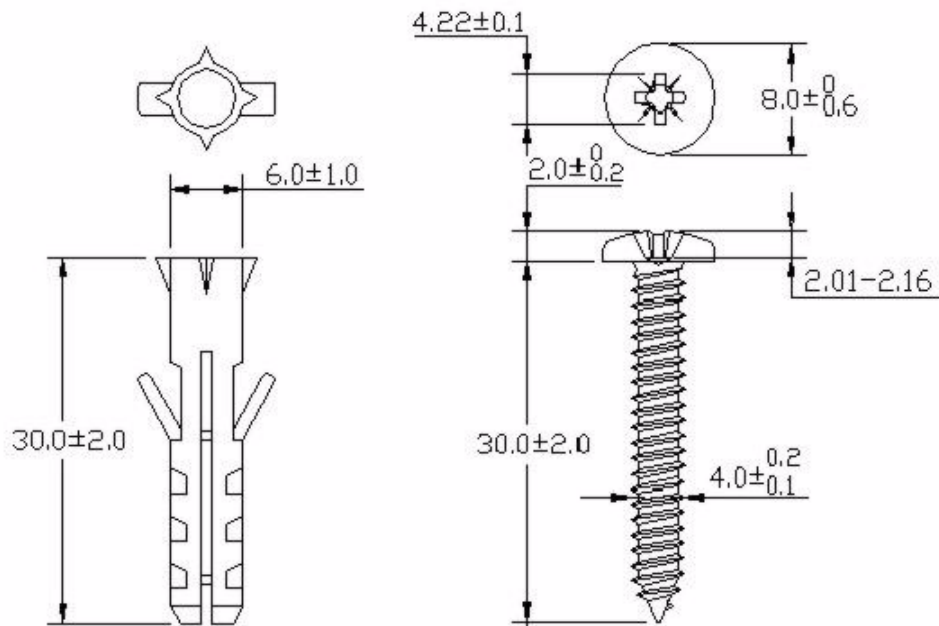


Be careful to avoid damaging pipes or cables located inside the wall when drilling holes for the screws.

- 3 Do not insert the screws all the way into the wall. Leave a small gap of about 0.5 cm between the heads of the screws and the wall.
- 4 Make sure the screws are snugly fastened to the wall. They need to hold the weight of the ZyXEL Device with the connection cables.
- 5 Align the holes on the back of the ZyXEL Device with the screws on the wall. Hang the ZyXEL Device on the screws.

Figure 185 Wall-mounting Example

The following are dimensions of an M4 tap screw and masonry plug used for wall mounting. All measurements are in millimeters (mm).

Figure 186 Masonry Plug and M4 Tap Screw

Power Adaptor Specifications

Table 110 North American Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-W 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5A, 18W

Table 110 North American Plug Standards

Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	UL, CUL (UL60950 Third Edition, CSA C22.2 No. 60950)

Table 111 European Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-B 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A, 18 W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	TUV-GS, CE (EN 60950)

Table 112 United Kingdom Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-D 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A, 18 W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	TUV-GS (BS EN 60950)

Table 113 Australia and New Zealand Plug Standards

AC Power Adaptor Model	ADS6818-1812-A 1215
Input Power	100~240 Volts AC, 50~60 Hz, 0.5 A
Output Power	12 Volts DC, 1.5 A, 18 W
Power Consumption	6 W Max
Safety Standards	DOFT (AS/NZS 60950, AS/NZSB 3112:1-2)

Power over Ethernet (PoE) Specifications

You can use a power over Ethernet injector to power this device. The injector must comply to IEEE 802.3af.

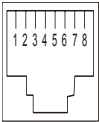
Table 114 Power over Ethernet Injector Specifications

Power Output	15.4 Watts maximum
Power Current	400 mA maximum

Table 115 Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments

	PIN NO	RJ-45 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT
--	--------	-------------------------

Table 115 Power over Ethernet Injector RJ-45 Port Pin Assignments

	1	Output Transmit Data +
	2	Output Transmit Data -
	3	Receive Data +
	4	Power +
	5	Power +
	6	Receive Data -
	7	Power -
	8	Power -

PART IV

Appendices and Index

Setting up Your Computer's IP Address (263)
Wireless LANs (299)
Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions (313)
IP Addresses and Subnetting (319)
Text File Based Auto Configuration (327)
Legal Information (335)
Customer Support (339)
Index (345)

Setting up Your Computer's IP Address

All computers must have a 10M or 100M Ethernet adapter card and TCP/IP installed.

Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to install and use TCP/IP on your computer. Windows 3.1 requires the purchase of a third-party TCP/IP application package.

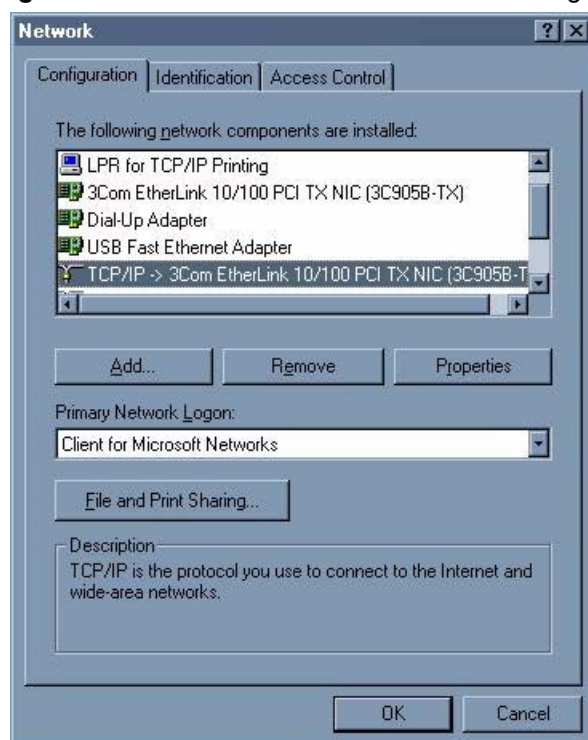
TCP/IP should already be installed on computers using Windows NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems.

After the appropriate TCP/IP components are installed, configure the TCP/IP settings in order to "communicate" with your network.

If you manually assign IP information instead of using dynamic assignment, make sure that your computers have IP addresses that place them in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device's LAN port.

Windows 95/98/Me

Click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel** and double-click the **Network** icon to open the **Network** window

Figure 187 Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration

Installing Components

The **Network** window **Configuration** tab displays a list of installed components. You need a network adapter, the TCP/IP protocol and Client for Microsoft Networks.

If you need the adapter:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Adapter** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select the manufacturer and model of your network adapter and then click **OK**.

If you need TCP/IP:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Protocol** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of **manufacturers**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the list of network protocols and then click **OK**.

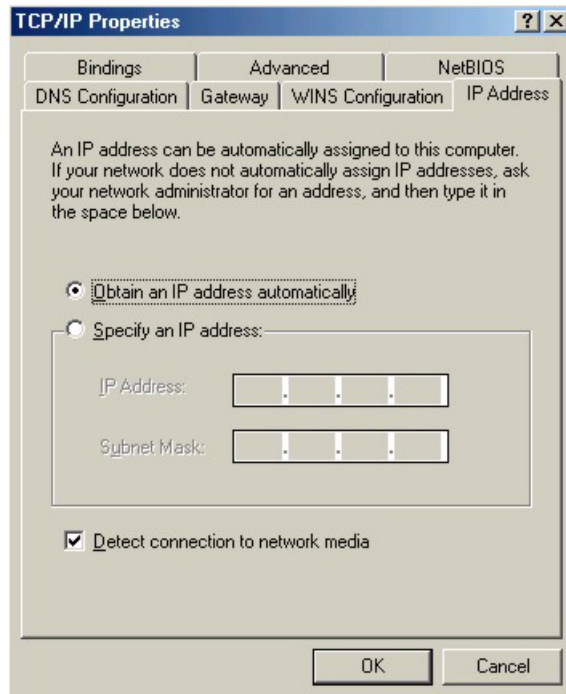
If you need Client for Microsoft Networks:

- 1 Click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Client** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of manufacturers.
- 4 Select **Client for Microsoft Networks** from the list of network clients and then click **OK**.
- 5 Restart your computer so the changes you made take effect.

Configuring

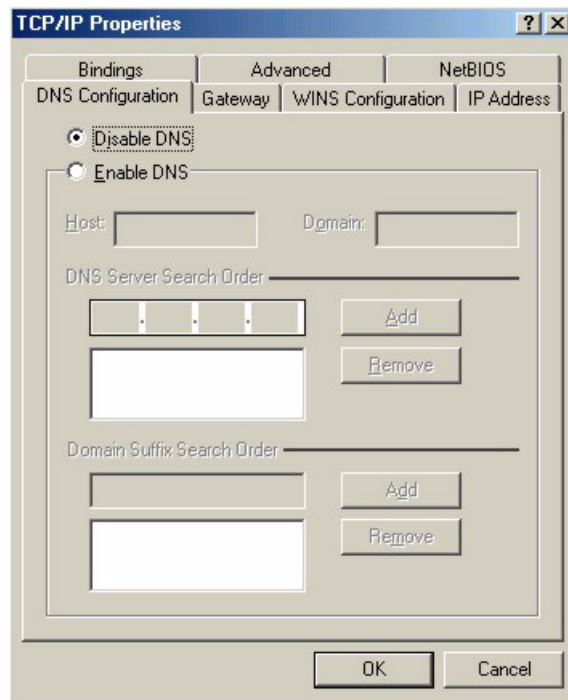
- 1 In the **Network** window **Configuration** tab, select your network adapter's TCP/IP entry and click **Properties**
- 2 Click the **IP Address** tab.
 - If your IP address is dynamic, select **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
 - If you have a static IP address, select **Specify an IP address** and type your information into the **IP Address** and **Subnet Mask** fields.

Figure 188 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address



- 3 Click the **DNS Configuration** tab.
 - If you do not know your DNS information, select **Disable DNS**.
 - If you know your DNS information, select **Enable DNS** and type the information in the fields below (you may not need to fill them all in).

Figure 189 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration



- 4 Click the **Gateway** tab.
 - If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove previously installed gateways.
 - If you have a gateway IP address, type it in the **New gateway field** and click **Add**.
- 5 Click **OK** to save and close the **TCP/IP Properties** window.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Network** window. Insert the Windows CD if prompted.
- 7 Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer when prompted.

Verifying Settings

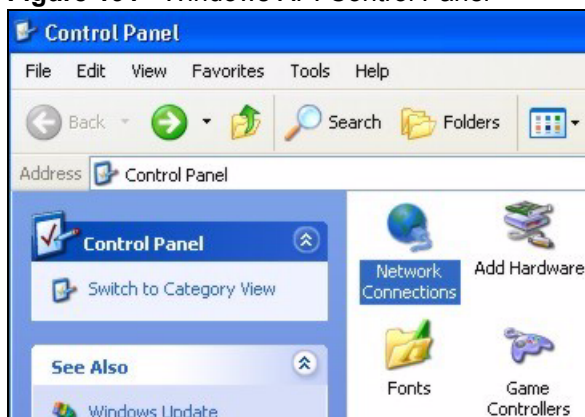
- 1 Click **Start** and then **Run**.
- 2 In the **Run** window, type "winipcfg" and then click **OK** to open the **IP Configuration** window.
- 3 Select your network adapter. You should see your computer's IP address, subnet mask and default gateway.

Windows 2000/NT/XP

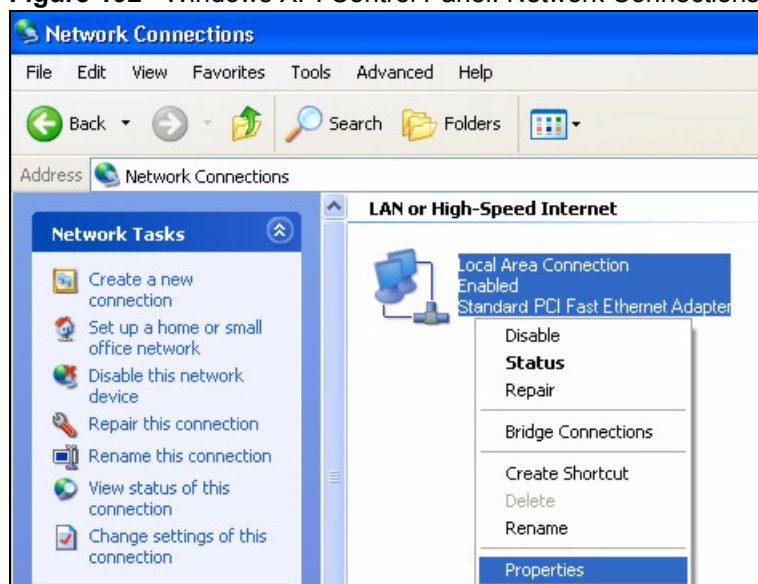
- 1 For Windows XP, click **start**, **Control Panel**. In Windows 2000/NT, click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel**.

Figure 190 Windows XP: Start Menu

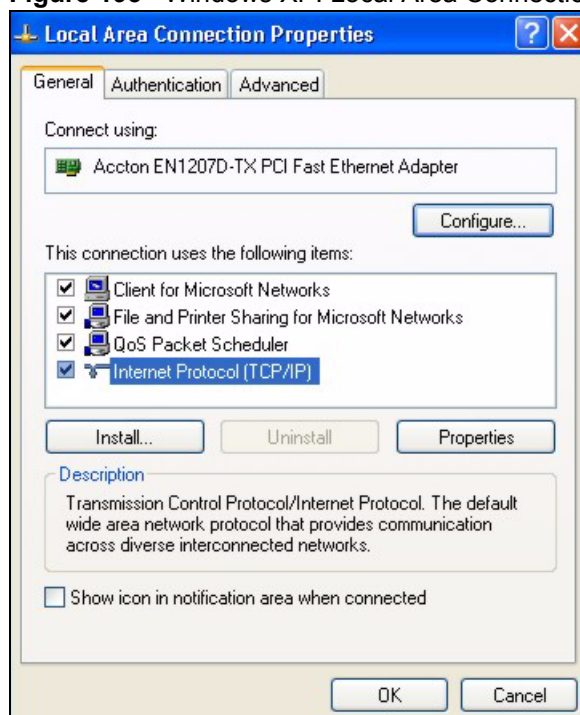
- 2 For Windows XP, click **Network Connections**. For Windows 2000/NT, click **Network and Dial-up Connections**.

Figure 191 Windows XP: Control Panel

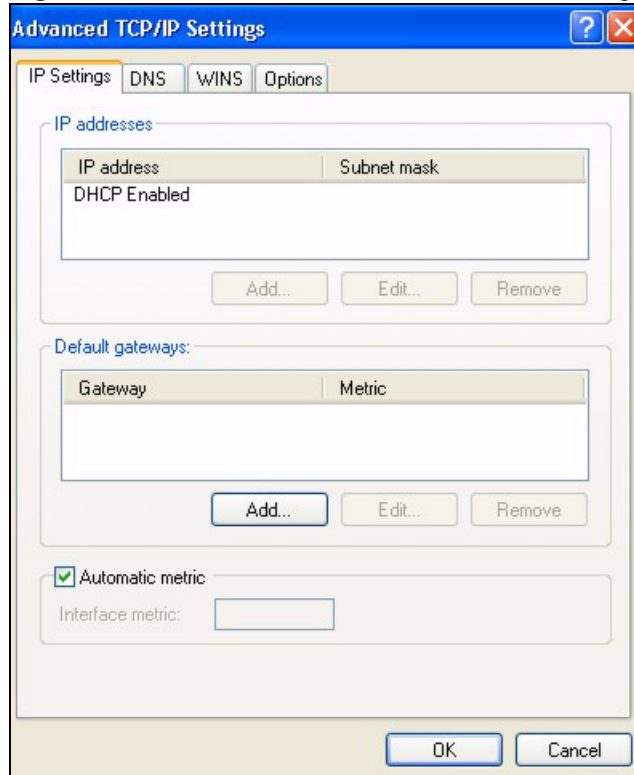
- 3 Right-click **Local Area Connection** and then click **Properties**.

Figure 192 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties

- 4 Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** (under the **General** tab in Win XP) and click **Properties**.

Figure 193 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties

- 5 The **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window opens (the **General** tab in Windows XP).
 - If you have a dynamic IP address click **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
 - If you have a static IP address click **Use the following IP Address** and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields. Click **Advanced**.

Figure 194 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings

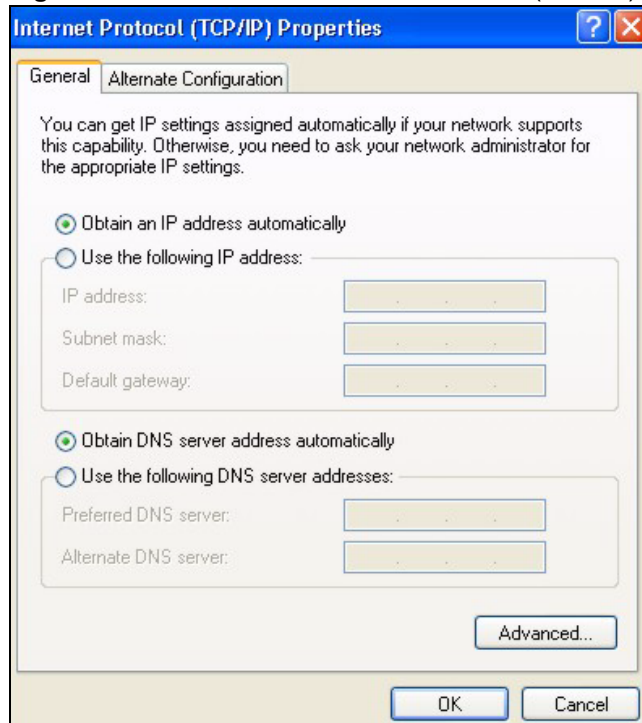
- 6** If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove any previously installed gateways in the **IP Settings** tab and click **OK**.

Do one or more of the following if you want to configure additional IP addresses:

- In the **IP Settings** tab, in IP addresses, click **Add**.
 - In **TCP/IP Address**, type an IP address in **IP address** and a subnet mask in **Subnet mask**, and then click **Add**.
 - Repeat the above two steps for each IP address you want to add.
 - Configure additional default gateways in the **IP Settings** tab by clicking **Add** in **Default gateways**.
 - In **TCP/IP Gateway Address**, type the IP address of the default gateway in **Gateway**. To manually configure a default metric (the number of transmission hops), clear the **Automatic metric** check box and type a metric in **Metric**.
 - Click **Add**.
 - Repeat the previous three steps for each default gateway you want to add.
 - Click **OK** when finished.
- 7** In the **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window (the **General** tab in Windows XP):
- Click **Obtain DNS server address automatically** if you do not know your DNS server IP address(es).
 - If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click **Use the following DNS server addresses**, and type them in the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** fields.

If you have previously configured DNS servers, click **Advanced** and then the **DNS** tab to order them.

Figure 195 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties



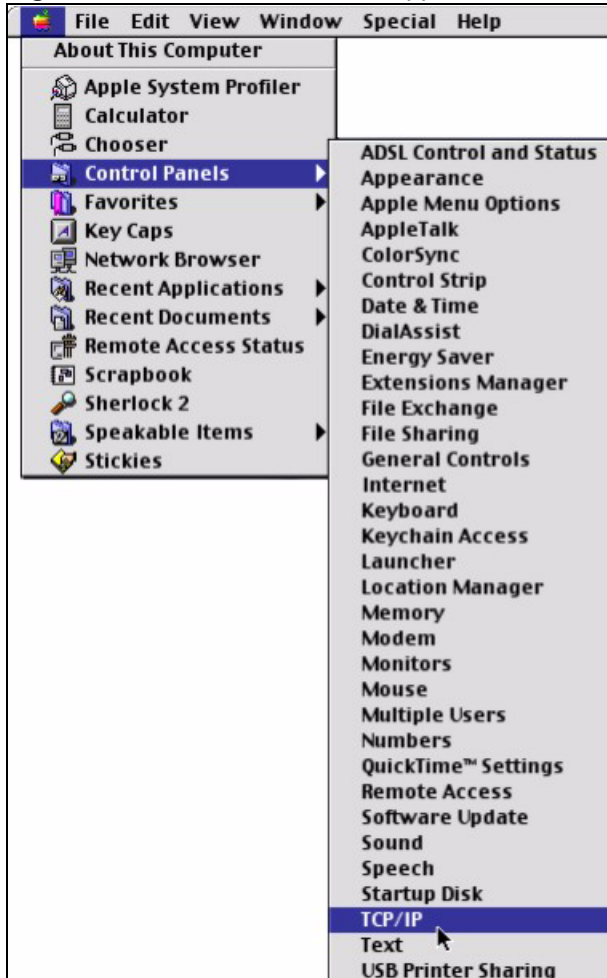
- 8** Click **OK** to close the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.
- 9** Click **OK** to close the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.
- 10** Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

Verifying Settings

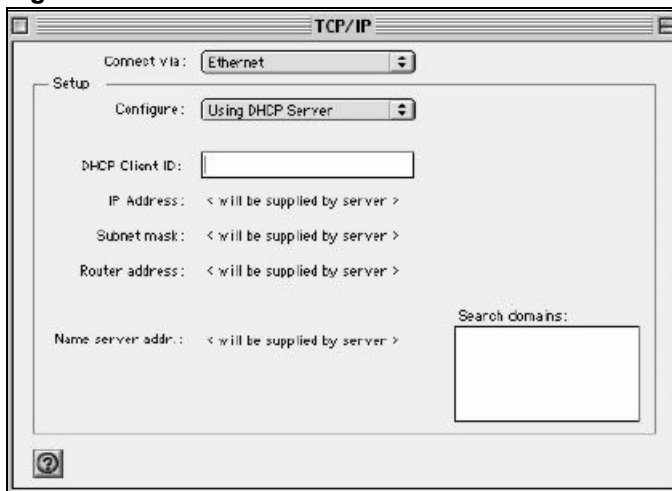
- 1** Click **Start**, **All Programs**, **Accessories** and then **Command Prompt**.
- 2** In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER]. You can also open **Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab.

Macintosh OS 8/9

- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, **Control Panel** and double-click **TCP/IP** to open the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.

Figure 196 Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu

- 2 Select **Ethernet built-in** from the **Connect via** list.

Figure 197 Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP

- 3 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP Server** from the **Configure** list.
- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.

- Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
 - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
 - Type the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in the **Router address** box.
- 5** Close the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.
 - 6** Click **Save** if prompted, to save changes to your configuration.
 - 7** Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

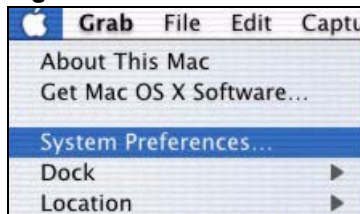
Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **TCP/IP Control Panel** window.

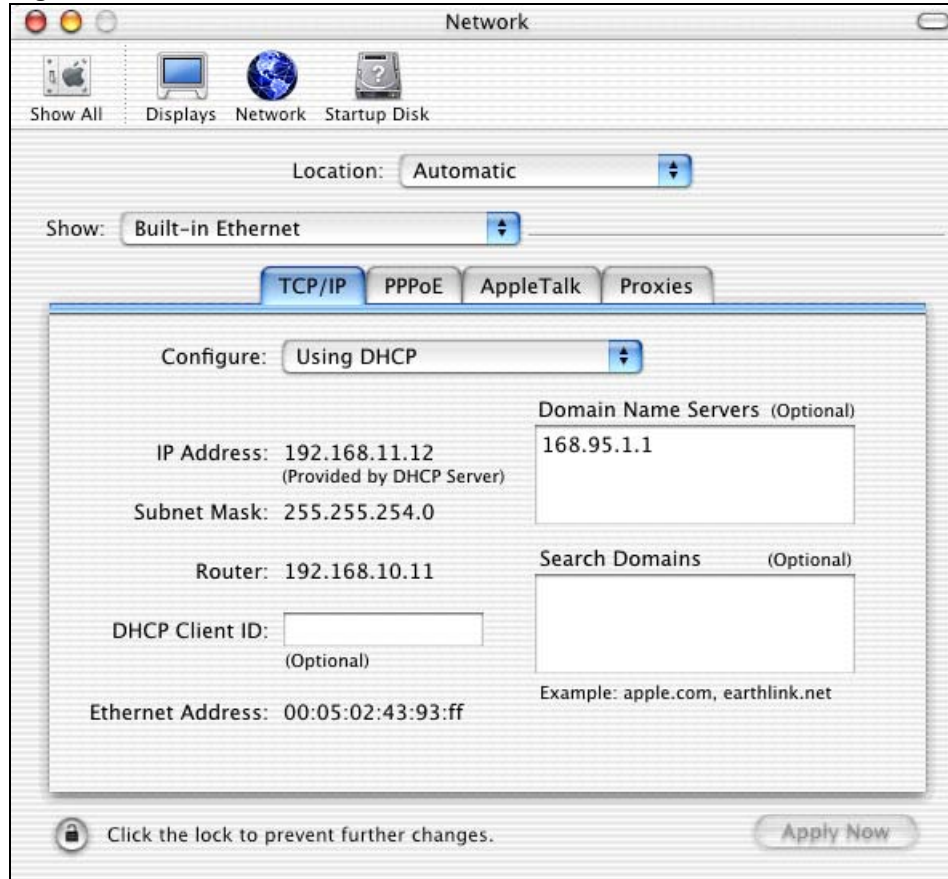
Macintosh OS X

- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, and click **System Preferences** to open the **System Preferences** window.

Figure 198 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu



- 2** Click **Network** in the icon bar.
 - Select **Automatic** from the **Location** list.
 - Select **Built-in Ethernet** from the **Show** list.
 - Click the **TCP/IP** tab.
- 3** For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure** list.

Figure 199 Macintosh OS X: Network

- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.
 - Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
 - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
 - Type the IP address of your ZyXEL Device in the **Router address** box.
- 5 Click **Apply Now** and close the window.
- 6 Turn on your ZyXEL Device and restart your computer (if prompted).

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **Network** window.

Wireless LANs

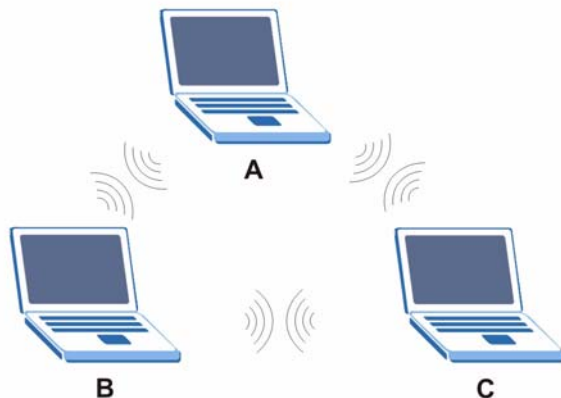
Wireless LAN Topologies

This section discusses ad-hoc and infrastructure wireless LAN topologies.

Ad-hoc Wireless LAN Configuration

The simplest WLAN configuration is an independent (Ad-hoc) WLAN that connects a set of computers with wireless adapters (A, B, C). Any time two or more wireless adapters are within range of each other, they can set up an independent network, which is commonly referred to as an ad-hoc network or Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS). The following diagram shows an example of notebook computers using wireless adapters to form an ad-hoc wireless LAN.

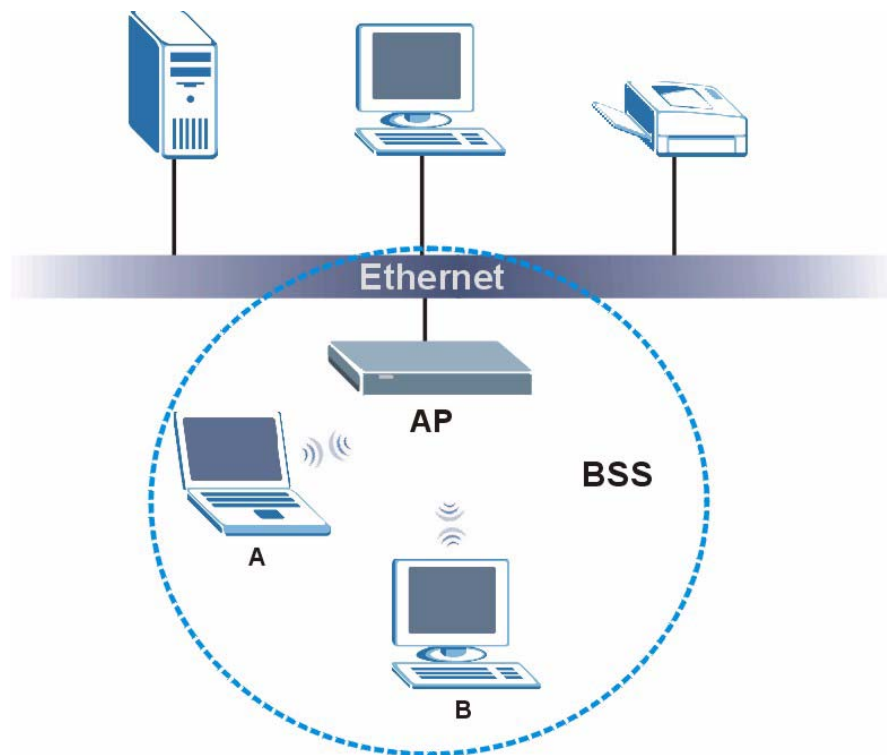
Figure 200 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network



BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

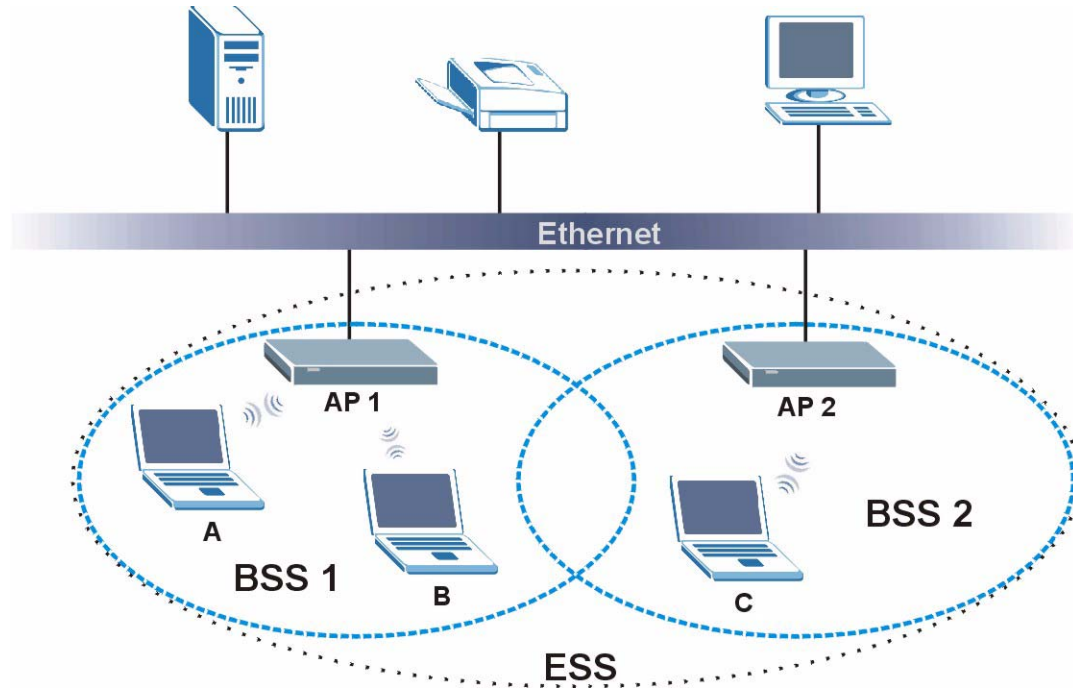
Figure 201 Basic Service Set

ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS).

This type of wireless LAN topology is called an Infrastructure WLAN. The Access Points not only provide communication with the wired network but also mediate wireless network traffic in the immediate neighborhood.

An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless clients within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

Figure 202 Infrastructure WLAN

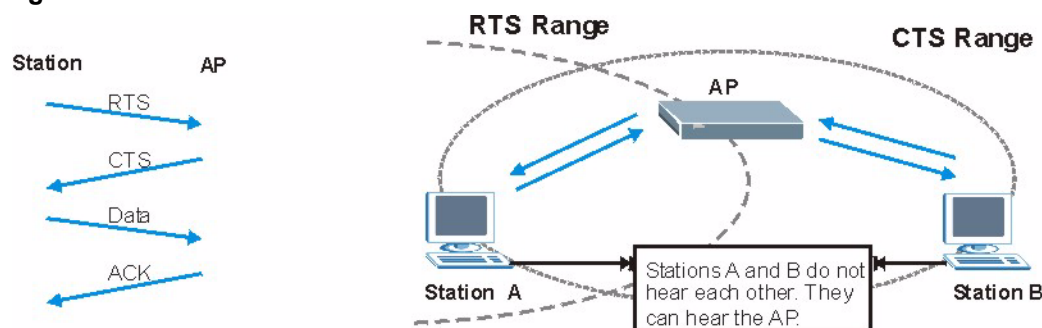
Channel

A channel is the radio frequency(ies) used by IEEE 802.11a/b/g wireless devices. Channels available depend on your geographical area. You may have a choice of channels (for your region) so you should use a different channel than an adjacent AP (access point) to reduce interference. Interference occurs when radio signals from different access points overlap causing interference and degrading performance.

Adjacent channels partially overlap however. To avoid interference due to overlap, your AP should be on a channel at least five channels away from a channel that an adjacent AP is using. For example, if your region has 11 channels and an adjacent AP is using channel 1, then you need to select a channel between 6 or 11.

RTS/CTS

A hidden node occurs when two stations are within range of the same access point, but are not within range of each other. The following figure illustrates a hidden node. Both stations (STA) are within range of the access point (AP) or wireless gateway, but out-of-range of each other, so they cannot "hear" each other, that is they do not know if the channel is currently being used. Therefore, they are considered hidden from each other.

Figure 203 RTS/CTS

When station **A** sends data to the AP, it might not know that the station **B** is already using the channel. If these two stations send data at the same time, collisions may occur when both sets of data arrive at the AP at the same time, resulting in a loss of messages for both stations.

RTS/CTS is designed to prevent collisions due to hidden nodes. An **RTS/CTS** defines the biggest size data frame you can send before an RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake is invoked.

When a data frame exceeds the **RTS/CTS** value you set (between 0 to 2432 bytes), the station that wants to transmit this frame must first send an RTS (Request To Send) message to the AP for permission to send it. The AP then responds with a CTS (Clear to Send) message to all other stations within its range to notify them to defer their transmission. It also reserves and confirms with the requesting station the time frame for the requested transmission.

Stations can send frames smaller than the specified **RTS/CTS** directly to the AP without the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

You should only configure **RTS/CTS** if the possibility of hidden nodes exists on your network and the "cost" of resending large frames is more than the extra network overhead involved in the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

If the **RTS/CTS** value is greater than the **Fragmentation Threshold** value (see next), then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.



Enabling the RTS Threshold causes redundant network overhead that could negatively affect the throughput performance instead of providing a remedy.

Fragmentation Threshold

A **Fragmentation Threshold** is the maximum data fragment size (between 256 and 2432 bytes) that can be sent in the wireless network before the AP will fragment the packet into smaller data frames.

A large **Fragmentation Threshold** is recommended for networks not prone to interference while you should set a smaller threshold for busy networks or networks that are prone to interference.

If the **Fragmentation Threshold** value is smaller than the **RTS/CTS** value (see previously) you set then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.

Preamble Type

Preamble is used to signal that data is coming to the receiver. **Short** and **Long** refer to the length of the synchronization field in a packet.

Short preamble increases performance as less time sending preamble means more time for sending data. All IEEE 802.11b/g compliant wireless adapters support long preamble, but not all support short preamble.

Select **Long** preamble if you are unsure what preamble mode the wireless adapters support, and to provide more reliable communications in busy wireless networks.

Select **Short** preamble if you are sure the wireless adapters support it, and to provide more efficient communications.

Select **Dynamic** to have the AP automatically use short preamble when wireless adapters support it, otherwise the AP uses long preamble.



The AP and the wireless adapters MUST use the same preamble mode in order to communicate.

IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN

IEEE 802.11g is fully compatible with the IEEE 802.11b standard. This means an IEEE 802.11b adapter can interface directly with an IEEE 802.11g access point (and vice versa) at 11 Mbps or lower depending on range. IEEE 802.11g has several intermediate rate steps between the maximum and minimum data rates. The IEEE 802.11g data rate and modulation are as follows:

Table 116 IEEE 802.11g

DATA RATE (MBPS)	MODULATION
1	DBPSK (Differential Binary Phase Shift Keyed)
2	DQPSK (Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying)
5.5 / 11	CCK (Complementary Code Keying)
6/9/12/18/24/36/48/54	OFDM (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing)

Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless clients, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the ZyXEL Device are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by device MAC address and hiding the ZyXEL Device identity.

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your ZyXEL Device.

Table 117 Wireless Security Levels

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least Secure	Unique SSID (Default)
	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
Most Secure	WPA2



You must enable the same wireless security settings on the ZyXEL Device and on all wireless clients that you want to associate with it.

IEEE 802.1x

In June 2001, the IEEE 802.1x standard was designed to extend the features of IEEE 802.11 to support extended authentication as well as providing additional accounting and control features. It is supported by Windows XP and a number of network devices. Some advantages of IEEE 802.1x are:

- User based identification that allows for roaming.
- Support for RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.
- Support for EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol, RFC 2486) that allows additional authentication methods to be deployed with no changes to the access point or the wireless clients.

RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication, authorization and accounting. The access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks:

- Authentication
 - Determines the identity of the users.
- Authorization

Determines the network services available to authenticated users once they are connected to the network.

- Accounting
Keeps track of the client's network activity.

RADIUS is a simple package exchange in which your AP acts as a message relay between the wireless client and the network RADIUS server.

Types of RADIUS Messages

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user authentication:

- Access-Request
Sent by an access point requesting authentication.
- Access-Reject
Sent by a RADIUS server rejecting access.
- Access-Accept
Sent by a RADIUS server allowing access.
- Access-Challenge
Sent by a RADIUS server requesting more information in order to allow access. The access point sends a proper response from the user and then sends another Access-Request message.

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user accounting:

- Accounting-Request
Sent by the access point requesting accounting.
- Accounting-Response
Sent by the RADIUS server to indicate that it has started or stopped accounting.

In order to ensure network security, the access point and the RADIUS server use a shared secret key, which is a password, they both know. The key is not sent over the network. In addition to the shared key, password information exchanged is also encrypted to protect the network from unauthorized access.

Types of EAP Authentication

This section discusses some popular authentication types: EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP and LEAP. Your wireless LAN device may not support all authentication types.

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE 802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, an access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server and an intermediary AP(s) that supports IEEE 802.1x. .

For EAP-TLS authentication type, you must first have a wired connection to the network and obtain the certificate(s) from a certificate authority (CA). A certificate (also called digital IDs) can be used to authenticate users and a CA issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner.

EAP-MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5)

MD5 authentication is the simplest one-way authentication method. The authentication server sends a challenge to the wireless client. The wireless client ‘proves’ that it knows the password by encrypting the password with the challenge and sends back the information. Password is not sent in plain text.

However, MD5 authentication has some weaknesses. Since the authentication server needs to get the plaintext passwords, the passwords must be stored. Thus someone other than the authentication server may access the password file. In addition, it is possible to impersonate an authentication server as MD5 authentication method does not perform mutual authentication. Finally, MD5 authentication method does not support data encryption with dynamic session key. You must configure WEP encryption keys for data encryption.

EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security)

With EAP-TLS, digital certifications are needed by both the server and the wireless clients for mutual authentication. The server presents a certificate to the client. After validating the identity of the server, the client sends a different certificate to the server. The exchange of certificates is done in the open before a secured tunnel is created. This makes user identity vulnerable to passive attacks. A digital certificate is an electronic ID card that authenticates the sender’s identity. However, to implement EAP-TLS, you need a Certificate Authority (CA) to handle certificates, which imposes a management overhead.

EAP-TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Service)

EAP-TTLS is an extension of the EAP-TLS authentication that uses certificates for only the server-side authentications to establish a secure connection. Client authentication is then done by sending username and password through the secure connection, thus client identity is protected. For client authentication, EAP-TTLS supports EAP methods and legacy authentication methods such as PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAP v2.

PEAP (Protected EAP)

Like EAP-TTLS, server-side certificate authentication is used to establish a secure connection, then use simple username and password methods through the secured connection to authenticate the clients, thus hiding client identity. However, PEAP only supports EAP methods, such as EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2 and EAP-GTC (EAP-Generic Token Card), for client authentication. EAP-GTC is implemented only by Cisco.

LEAP

LEAP (Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol) is a Cisco implementation of IEEE 802.1x.

Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

The AP maps a unique key that is generated with the RADIUS server. This key expires when the wireless connection times out, disconnects or reauthentication times out. A new WEP key is generated each time reauthentication is performed.

If this feature is enabled, it is not necessary to configure a default encryption key in the Wireless screen. You may still configure and store keys here, but they will not be used while Dynamic WEP is enabled.



EAP-MD5 cannot be used with Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

For added security, certificate-based authentications (EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS and PEAP) use dynamic keys for data encryption. They are often deployed in corporate environments, but for public deployment, a simple user name and password pair is more practical. The following table is a comparison of the features of authentication types.

Table 118 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types

	EAP-MD5	EAP-TLS	EAP-TTLS	PEAP	LEAP
Mutual Authentication	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Certificate – Client	No	Yes	Optional	Optional	No
Certificate – Server	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic Key Exchange	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Credential Integrity	None	Strong	Strong	Strong	Moderate
Deployment Difficulty	Easy	Hard	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate
Client Identity Protection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

WPA and WPA2

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA or WPA2 and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, just use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

Encryption

Both WPA and WPA2 improve data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. WPA and WPA2 use Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP) to offer stronger encryption than TKIP.

TKIP uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm called Rijndael. They both include a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

WPA and WPA2 regularly change and rotate the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice.

The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), with TKIP and AES it is more difficult to decrypt data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP and difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA(2) and WPA(2)-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA(2)-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA(2)-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs a consistent, single, alphanumeric password to derive a PMK which is used to generate unique temporal encryption keys. This prevents all wireless devices sharing the same encryption keys. (a weakness of WEP)

User Authentication

WPA and WPA2 apply IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database. WPA2 reduces the number of key exchange messages from six to four (CCMP 4-way handshake) and shortens the time required to connect to a network. Other WPA2 authentication features that are different from WPA include key caching and pre-authentication. These two features are optional and may not be supported in all wireless devices.

Key caching allows a wireless client to store the PMK it derived through a successful authentication with an AP. The wireless client uses the PMK when it tries to connect to the same AP and does not need to go with the authentication process again.

Pre-authentication enables fast roaming by allowing the wireless client (already connecting to an AP) to perform IEEE 802.1x authentication with another AP before connecting to it.

Wireless Client WPA Supplicants

A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client.

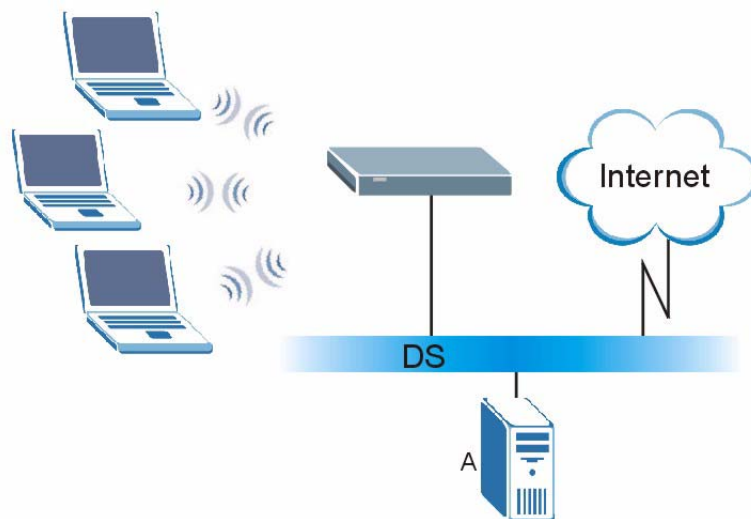
The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

You need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. "A" is the RADIUS server. "DS" is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client's authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- 3 The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the pair-wise key to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

Figure 204 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example



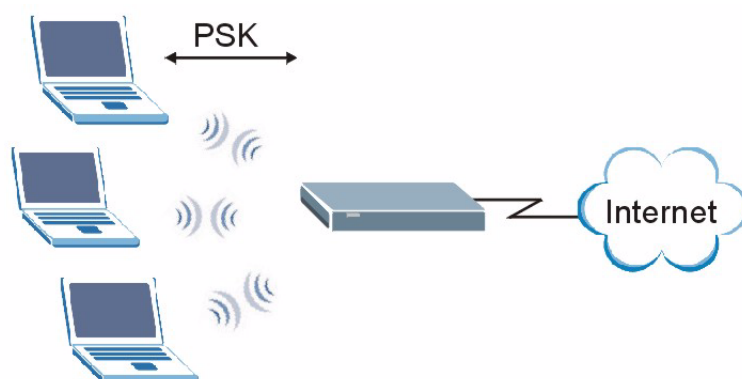
WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and (only) allows it to join the network if the password matches.
- 3 The AP and wireless clients use the pre-shared key to generate a common PMK (Pairwise Master Key).

- 4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process to encrypt data exchanged between them.

Figure 205 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



Security Parameters Summary

Refer to this table to see what other security parameters you should configure for each Authentication Method/ key management protocol type. MAC address filters are not dependent on how you configure these security features.

Table 119 Wireless Security Relational Matrix

AUTHENTICATION METHOD/ KEY MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL	ENCRYPTION METHOD	ENTER MANUAL KEY	IEEE 802.1X
Open	None	No	Disable
			Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
Open	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
Shared	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
WPA	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable
WPA2	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA2-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable

Antenna Overview

An antenna couples RF signals onto air. A transmitter within a wireless device sends an RF signal to the antenna, which propagates the signal through the air. The antenna also operates in reverse by capturing RF signals from the air.

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

Antenna Characteristics

Frequency

An antenna in the frequency of 2.4GHz (IEEE 802.11b) or 5GHz(IEEE 802.11a) is needed to communicate efficiently in a wireless LAN.

Radiation Pattern

A radiation pattern is a diagram that allows you to visualize the shape of the antenna's coverage area.

Antenna Gain

Antenna gain, measured in dB (decibel), is the increase in coverage within the RF beam width. Higher antenna gain improves the range of the signal for better communications.

For an indoor site, each 1 dB increase in antenna gain results in a range increase of approximately 2.5%. For an unobstructed outdoor site, each 1dB increase in gain results in a range increase of approximately 5%. Actual results may vary depending on the network environment.

Antenna gain is sometimes specified in dBi, which is how much the antenna increases the signal power compared to using an isotropic antenna. An isotropic antenna is a theoretical perfect antenna that sends out radio signals equally well in all directions. dBi represents the true gain that the antenna provides.

Types of Antennas for WLAN

There are two types of antennas used for wireless LAN applications.

- Omni-directional antennas send the RF signal out in all directions on a horizontal plane. The coverage area is torus-shaped (like a donut) which makes these antennas ideal for a room environment. With a wide coverage area, it is possible to make circular overlapping coverage areas with multiple access points.
- Directional antennas concentrate the RF signal in a beam, like a flashlight does with the light from its bulb. The angle of the beam determines the width of the coverage pattern. Angles typically range from 20 degrees (very directional) to 120 degrees (less directional). Directional antennas are ideal for hallways and outdoor point-to-point applications.

Positioning Antennas

In general, antennas should be mounted as high as practically possible and free of obstructions. In point-to-point application, position both antennas at the same height and in a direct line of sight to each other to attain the best performance.

For omni-directional antennas mounted on a table, desk, and so on, point the antenna up. For omni-directional antennas mounted on a wall or ceiling, point the antenna down. For a single AP application, place omni-directional antennas as close to the center of the coverage area as possible.

For directional antennas, point the antenna in the direction of the desired coverage area.

Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).



Internet Explorer 6 screens are used here. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.

Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

Disable pop-up Blockers

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Pop-up Blocker** and then select **Turn Off Pop-up Blocker**.

Figure 206 Pop-up Blocker

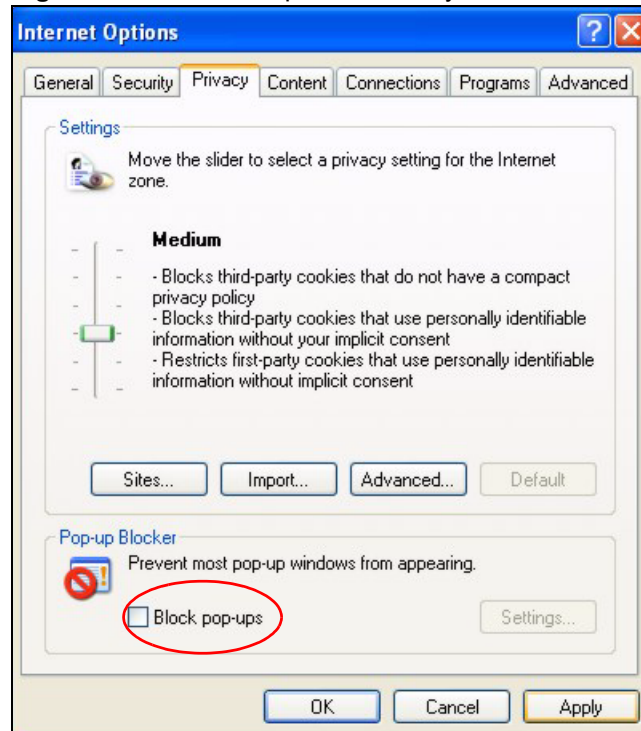


You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the **Pop-up Blocker** section in the **Privacy** tab.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options, Privacy**.

- 2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

Figure 207 Internet Options: Privacy

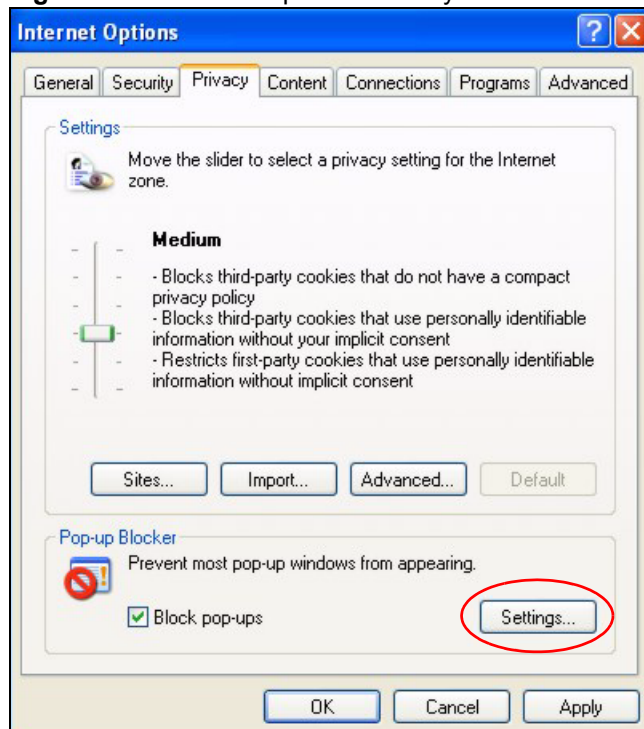


- 3 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

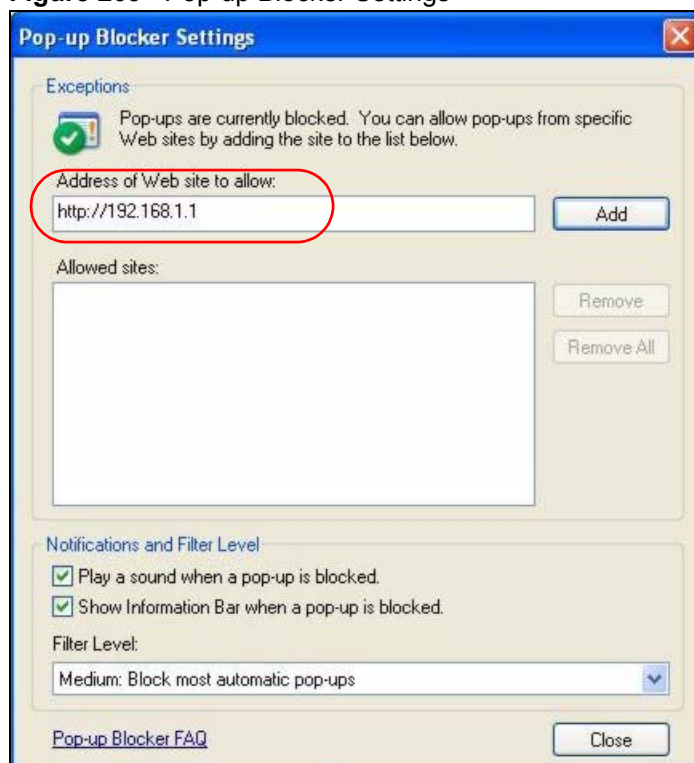
Enable pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.
- 2 Select **Settings...** to open the **Pop-up Blocker Settings** screen.

Figure 208 Internet Options: Privacy

- 3 Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix "http://". For example, http://192.168.167.1.
- 4 Click **Add** to move the IP address to the list of **Allowed sites**.

Figure 209 Pop-up Blocker Settings

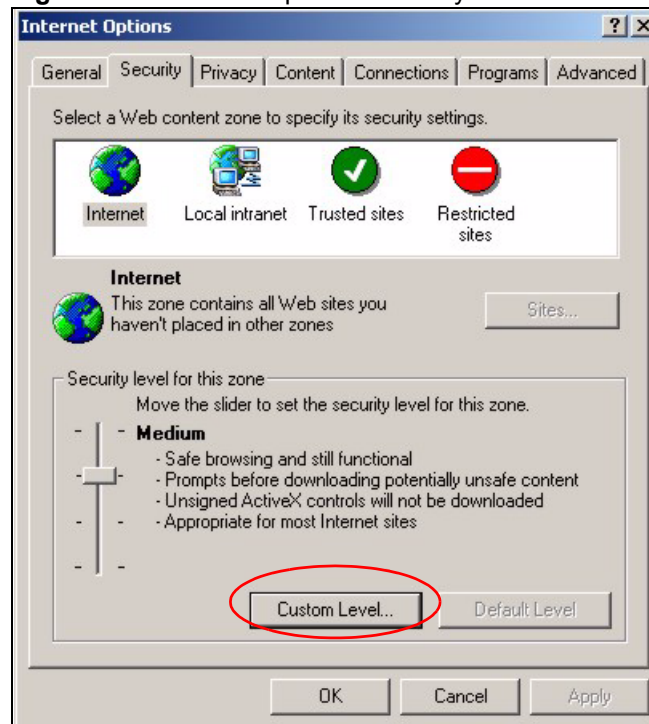
- 5 Click **Close** to return to the **Privacy** screen.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

JavaScripts

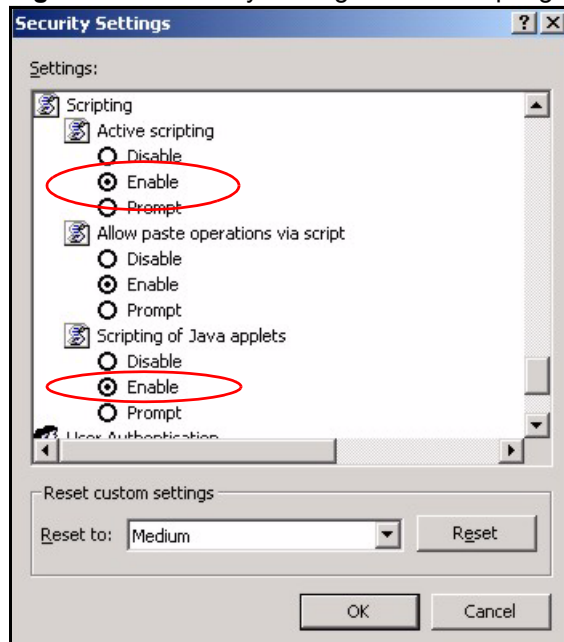
If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScripts are allowed.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

Figure 210 Internet Options: Security

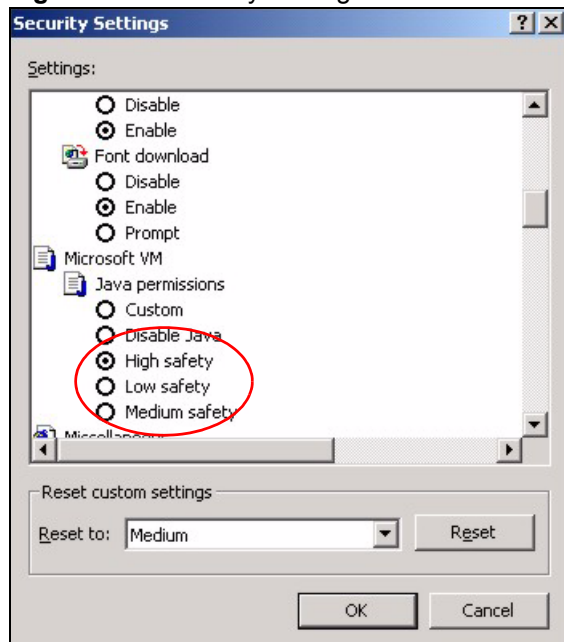


- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Scripting**.
- 4 Under **Active scripting** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 5 Under **Scripting of Java applets** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 6 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 211 Security Settings - Java Scripting

Java Permissions

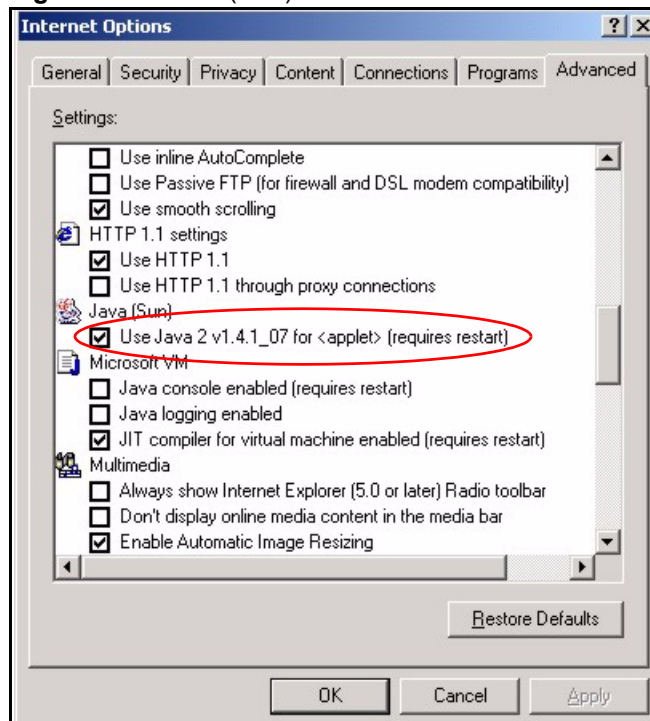
- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Microsoft VM**.
- 4 Under **Java permissions** make sure that a safety level is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 212 Security Settings - Java

JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 Make sure that **Use Java 2 for <applet>** under **Java (Sun)** is selected.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 213 Java (Sun)



IP Addresses and Subnetting

This appendix introduces IP addresses and subnet masks.

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

Introduction to IP Addresses

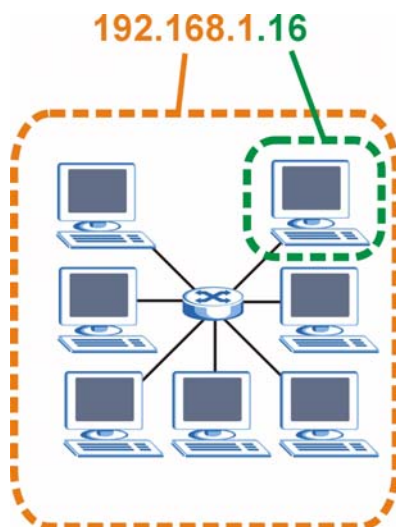
One part of the IP address is the network number, and the other part is the host ID. In the same way that houses on a street share a common street name, the hosts on a network share a common network number. Similarly, as each house has its own house number, each host on the network has its own unique identifying number - the host ID. Routers use the network number to send packets to the correct network, while the host ID determines to which host on the network the packets are delivered.

Structure

An IP address is made up of four parts, written in dotted decimal notation (for example, 192.168.1.1). Each of these four parts is known as an octet. An octet is an eight-digit binary number (for example 11000000, which is 192 in decimal notation).

Therefore, each octet has a possible range of 00000000 to 11111111 in binary, or 0 to 255 in decimal.

The following figure shows an example IP address in which the first three octets (192.168.1) are the network number, and the fourth octet (16) is the host ID.

Figure 214 Network Number and Host ID

How much of the IP address is the network number and how much is the host ID varies according to the subnet mask.

Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). The term “subnet” is short for “sub-network”.

A subnet mask has 32 bits. If a bit in the subnet mask is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

The following example shows a subnet mask identifying the network number (in bold text) and host ID of an IP address (192.168.1.2 in decimal).

Table 120 Subnet Masks

	1ST OCTET: (192)	2ND OCTET: (168)	3RD OCTET: (1)	4TH OCTET (2)
IP Address (Binary)	11000000	10101000	00000001	00000010
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000
Network Number	11000000	10101000	00000001	
Host ID				00000010

By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the leftmost bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Subnet masks can be referred to by the size of the network number part (the bits with a “1” value). For example, an “8-bit mask” means that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones and the remaining 24 bits are zeroes.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just like IP addresses. The following examples show the binary and decimal notation for 8-bit, 16-bit, 24-bit and 29-bit subnet masks.

Table 121 Subnet Masks

	BINARY				DECIMAL
	1ST OCTET	2ND OCTET	3RD OCTET	4TH OCTET	
8-bit mask	11111111	00000000	00000000	00000000	255.0.0.0
16-bit mask	11111111	11111111	00000000	00000000	255.255.0.0
24-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000	255.255.255.0
29-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	11111000	255.255.255.248

Network Size

The size of the network number determines the maximum number of possible hosts you can have on your network. The larger the number of network number bits, the smaller the number of remaining host ID bits.

An IP address with host IDs of all zeros is the IP address of the network (192.168.1.0 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example). An IP address with host IDs of all ones is the broadcast address for that network (192.168.1.255 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example).

As these two IP addresses cannot be used for individual hosts, calculate the maximum number of possible hosts in a network as follows:

Table 122 Maximum Host Numbers

SUBNET MASK		HOST ID SIZE		MAXIMUM NUMBER OF HOSTS
8 bits	255.0.0.0	24 bits	$2^{24} - 2$	16777214
16 bits	255.255.0.0	16 bits	$2^{16} - 2$	65534
24 bits	255.255.255.0	8 bits	$2^8 - 2$	254
29 bits	255.255.255.248	3 bits	$2^3 - 2$	6

Notation

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows some possible subnet masks using both notations.

Table 123 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000	0
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000	128

Table 123 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation (continued)

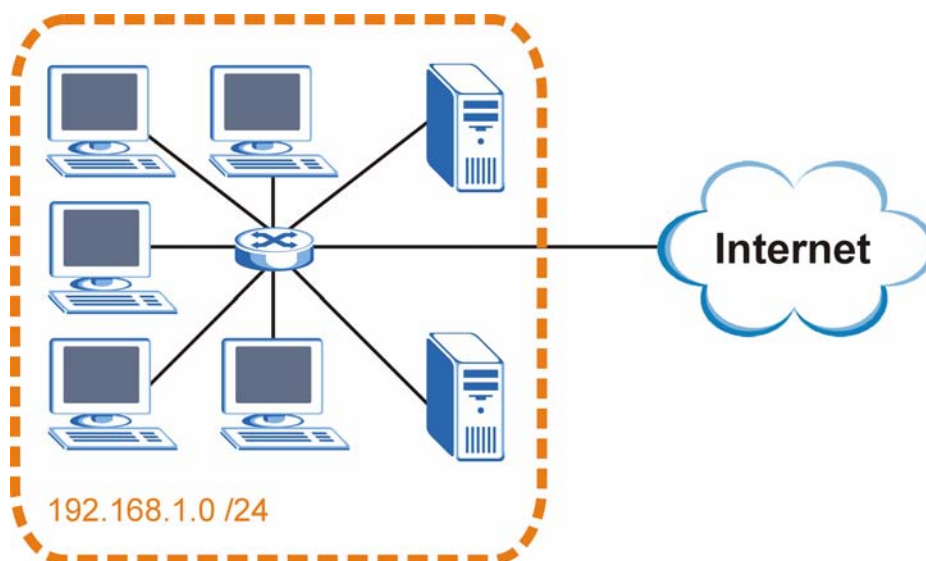
SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000	192
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000	224
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000	240
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000	248
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100	252

Subnetting

You can use subnetting to divide one network into multiple sub-networks. In the following example a network administrator creates two sub-networks to isolate a group of servers from the rest of the company network for security reasons.

In this example, the company network address is 192.168.1.0. The first three octets of the address (192.168.1) are the network number, and the remaining octet is the host ID, allowing a maximum of $2^8 - 2$ or 254 possible hosts.

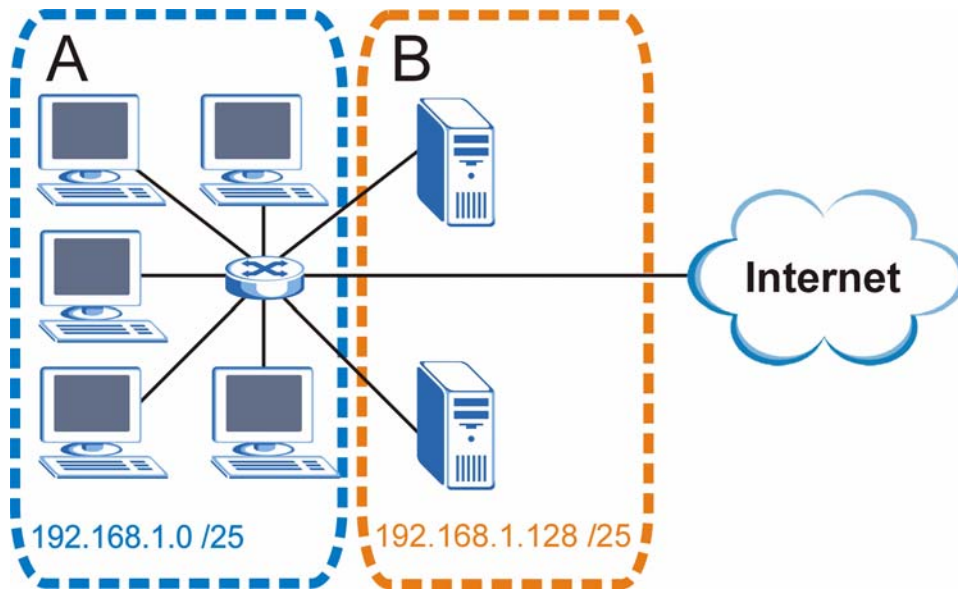
The following figure shows the company network before subnetting.

Figure 215 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting

You can “borrow” one of the host ID bits to divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate sub-networks. The subnet mask is now 25 bits (255.255.255.128 or /25).

The “borrowed” host ID bit can have a value of either 0 or 1, allowing two subnets; 192.168.1.0 /25 and 192.168.1.128 /25.

The following figure shows the company network after subnetting. There are now two sub-networks, **A** and **B**.

Figure 216 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting

In a 25-bit subnet the host ID has 7 bits, so each sub-network has a maximum of $2^7 - 2$ or 126 possible hosts (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet's address itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is subnet **A** itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is its broadcast address. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for subnet **A** is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126.

Similarly, the host ID range for subnet **B** is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

Example: Four Subnets

The previous example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a 24-bit address into two subnets. Similarly, to divide a 24-bit address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations (00, 01, 10 and 11). The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192.

Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving $2^6 - 2$ or 62 hosts for each subnet (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

Table 124 Subnet 1

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address (Decimal)	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

Table 125 Subnet 2

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

Table 126 Subnet 3

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

Table 127 Subnet 4

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

Example: Eight Subnets

Similarly, use a 27-bit mask to create eight subnets (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110 and 111).

The following table shows IP address last octet values for each subnet.

Table 128 Eight Subnets

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127

Table 128 Eight Subnets (continued)

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 24-bit network number.

Table 129 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 16-bit network number.

Table 130 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6

Table 130 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning (continued)

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1

Configuring IP Addresses

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. You must also enable Network Address Translation (NAT) on the ZyXEL Device.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address for your ZyXEL Device that is easy to remember (for instance, 192.168.1.1) but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your ZyXEL Device will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (running only between two branch offices, for example) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 — 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 — 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 — 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP, or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, *Address Allocation for Private Internets* and RFC 1466, *Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space*.

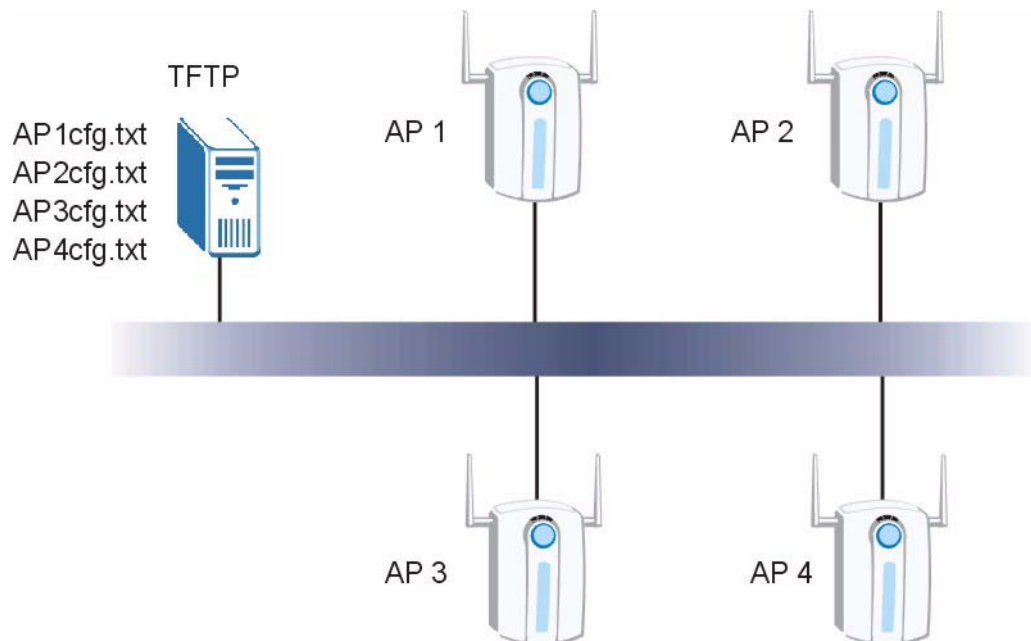
Text File Based Auto Configuration

This chapter describes how administrators can use text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings for multiple APs.

Text File Based Auto Configuration Overview

You can use plain text configuration files to configure the wireless LAN settings on multiple APs. The AP can automatically get a configuration file from a TFTP server at startup or after renewing DHCP client information.

Figure 217 Text File Based Auto Configuration



Use one of the following methods to give the AP the IP address of the TFTP server where you store the configuration files and the name of the configuration file that it should download.

You can have a different configuration file for each AP. You can also have multiple APs use the same configuration file.



If adjacent APs use the same configuration file, you should leave out the channel setting since they could interfere with each other's wireless traffic.

Auto Configuration by DHCP

A DHCP response can use options 66 and 67 to assign a TFTP server IP address and a filename. If the AP is configured as a DHCP client, these settings can be used to perform auto configuration.

Table 131 Auto Configuration by DHCP

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wcfg autocfg dhcp [enable disable]	Turn configuration of TFTP server IP address and filename through DHCP on or off.

If this feature is enabled and the DHCP response provides a TFTP server IP address and a filename, the AP will try to download the file from the specified TFTP server. The AP then uses the file to configure wireless LAN settings.



Not all DHCP servers allow you to specify options 66 and 67.

Manual Configuration

Use the following command to manually configure a TFTP server IP address and a file name for the AP to use for auto provisioning whenever the AP starts up. See [Section 27.1 on page 263](#) for how to access the Command Interpreter (CI).

Table 132 Manual Configuration

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
wcfg autocfg server [IP] [filename]	Specify the TFTP server IP address and file name from which the AP is to download a configuration file whenever the AP starts up.

Configuration Via SNMP

You can configure and trigger the auto configuration remotely via SNMP.

Use the following procedure to have the AP download the configuration file.

Table 133 Configuration via SNMP

STEPS	MIB VARIABLE	VALUE
Step 1	pwTftpServer	Set the IP address of the TFTP server.
Step 2	pwTftpFileName	Set the file name, for example, g3000hcfg.txt.

Table 133 Configuration via SNMP

STEPS	MIB VARIABLE	VALUE
Step 3	pwTftpFileType	Set to 3 (text configuration file).
Step 4	pwTftpOpCommand	Set to 2 (download).

Verifying Your Configuration File Upload Via SNMP

You can use SNMP management software to display the configuration file version currently on the device by using the following MIB.

Table 134 Displaying the File Version

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwCfgVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.2	This displays the current configuration file version.

Troubleshooting Via SNMP

If you have any difficulties with the configuration file upload, you can try using the following MIB 10 to 20 seconds after using SNMP to have the AP download the configuration file.

Table 135 Displaying the File Version

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwTftpOpStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.6	This displays the current operating status of the TFTP client.

Configuration File Format

The text based configuration file must use the following format.

Figure 218 Configuration File Format

```

!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 12
wcfg security 1 xxx
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 1 xxx
wcfg ssid save

```

The first line must be `!#ZYXEL PROWLAN`.

The second line must specify the file version. The AP compares the file version with the version of the last configuration file that it downloaded. If the version of the downloaded file is the same or smaller (older), the AP ignores the file. If the version of the downloaded file is larger (newer), the AP uses the file.

Configuration File Rules

You can only use the `wlan` and `wcfg` commands in the configuration file. The AP ignores other ZyNOS commands but continues to check the next command.

The AP ignores any improperly formatted commands and continues to check the next line.

If there are any errors while processing the configuration file, the AP generates a message with the line number and reason for the first error (subsequent errors during the processing of an individual configuration file are not recorded). You can use SNMP management software to display the message by using the following MIB.

Table 136 Displaying the Auto Configuration Status

ITEM	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
pwAutoCfgMessage	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.9.1.9	Auto configuration status message string

The commands will be executed line by line just like if you entered them in a console or Telnet CI session. Be careful to ensure the integrity of the whole AP configuration. If there are existing settings in the AP, the newly loaded configuration file will either coexist with the previous settings or replace them.

You can zip each configuration file. You must use the store compression method and a .zip file extension. When zipping a configuration file, you can also add password protection using the same password that you use to log into the AP.

Wcfg Command Configuration File Examples

These example configuration files use the `wcfg` command to configure security and SSID profiles.

Figure 219 WEP Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 11
wcfg security 1 name Test-wep
wcfg security 1 security wep
wcfg security 1 wep keysize 64 ascii
wcfg security 1 wep key1 abcde
wcfg security 1 wep key2 bcdef
wcfg security 1 wep key3 cdefg
wcfg security 1 wep key4 defgh
wcfg security 1 wep keyindex 1
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 1 name ssid-wep
wcfg ssid 1 security Test-wep
wcfg ssid 1 isolation disable
wcfg ssid 1 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

Figure 220 802.1X Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 12
wcfg security 2 name Test-8021x
wcfg security 2 mode 8021x-static128
wcfg security 2 wep key1 abcdefghijklm
wcfg security 2 wep key2 bcdefghijklmn
wcfg security 2 wep keyindex 1
wcfg security 2 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 2 idletime 3600
wcfg security save
wcfg radius 2 name radius-rd
wcfg radius 2 primary 172.23.3.4 1812 1234 enable
wcfg radius 2 backup 172.23.3.5 1812 1234 enable
wcfg radius save
wcfg ssid 2 name ssid-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 security Test-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 radius radius-rd
wcfg ssid 2 qos 4
wcfg ssid 2 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 2 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

Figure 221 WPA-PSK Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 13
wcfg security 3 name Test-wpapsk
wcfg security 3 mode wpapsk
wcfg security 3 passphrase qwertyuiop
wcfg security 3 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 3 idletime 3600
wcfg security 3 groupkeytime 1800
wcfg security save
wcfg ssid 3 name ssid-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 security Test-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 qos 4
wcfg ssid 3 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 3 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

Figure 222 WPA Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 14
wcfg security 4 name Test-wpa
wcfg security 4 mode wpa
wcfg security 4 reauthtime 1800
wcfg security 4 idletime 3600
wcfg security 4 groupkeytime 1800
wcfg security save
wcfg radius 4 name radius-rd1
wcfg radius 4 primary 172.0.20.38 1812 20 enable
wcfg radius 4 backup 172.0.20.39 1812 20 enable
wcfg radius save
wcfg ssid 4 name ssid-wpa
wcfg ssid 4 security Test-wpa
wcfg ssid 4 qos 4
wcfg ssid 4 l2isolation disable
wcfg ssid 4 macfilter disable
wcfg ssid save
```

Wlan Command Configuration File Example

This example configuration file uses the `wlan` command to configure the AP to use the security and SSID profiles from the `wcfg` command configuration file examples and general wireless settings. You could actually combine all of this chapter's example configuration files into a single configuration file. Remember that the commands are applied in order. So for example, you would place the commands that create security and SSID profiles before the commands that tell the AP to use those profiles.

Figure 223 Wlan Configuration File Example

```
!#ZYXEL PROWLAN
!#VERSION 15
wcfg ssid 1 name ssid-wep
wcfg ssid 1 security Test-wep
wcfg ssid 2 name ssid-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 security Test-8021x
wcfg ssid 2 radius radius-rd
wcfg ssid 3 name ssid-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 3 security Test-wpapsk
wcfg ssid 4 name ssid-wpa2psk
wcfg ssid 4 security Test-wpa2psk
wcfg ssid save
!line starting with '!' is comment
!change to channel 8
wlan chid 8
!change operating mode -> AP mode,
!then select ssid-wep as running WLAN profile
wlan opmode 0
wlan ssidprofile ssid-wep
!change operating mode -> MBSSID mode,
!then select ssid-wpapsk, ssid-wpa2psk as running WLAN profiles
wlan opmode 3
wlan ssidprofile ssid-wpapsk ssid-wpa2psk
! set output power level to 50%
wlan output power 2
```


Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2008 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

The device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this device does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the device off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- 1 Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- 2 Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- 3 Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- 4 Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.



FCC Radiation Exposure Statement

- This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- For operation within 5.15 ~ 5.25GHz frequency range, it is restricted to indoor environment.
- IEEE 802.11b or 802.11g operation of this product in the U.S.A. is firmware-limited to channels 1 through 11.
- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, a separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between the antenna of this device and all persons.

注意 !

依據 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信規定作業之無線電信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

在 5250MHz~5350MHz 頻帶內操作之無線資訊傳輸設備，限於室內使用。

本機限在不干擾合法電臺與不受被干擾保障條件下於室內使用。

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device has been designed for the WLAN 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz networks throughout the EC region and Switzerland, with restrictions in France.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Viewing Certifications

- 1 Go to <http://www.zyxel.com>.
- 2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Customer Support

In the event of problems that cannot be solved by using this manual, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a ZyXEL office for the region in which you bought the device. Regional offices are listed below (see also http://www.zyxel.com/web/contact_us.php). Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

“+” is the (prefix) number you dial to make an international telephone call.

Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide)

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com.tw
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com.tw
- Telephone: +886-3-578-3942
- Fax: +886-3-578-2439
- Web: www.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science Park, Hsinchu 300, Taiwan

China - ZyXEL Communications (Beijing) Corp.

- Support E-mail: cso.zycn@zyxel.cn
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.cn
- Telephone: +86-010-82800646
- Fax: +86-010-82800587
- Address: 902, Unit B, Horizon Building, No.6, Zhichun Str, Haidian District, Beijing
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.cn>

China - ZyXEL Communications (Shanghai) Corp.

- Support E-mail: cso.zycn@zyxel.cn
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.cn
- Telephone: +86-021-61199055
- Fax: +86-021-52069033

- Address: 1005F, ShengGao International Tower, No.137 XianXia Rd., Shanghai
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.cn>

Costa Rica

- Support E-mail: soporte@zyxel.co.cr
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.cr
- Telephone: +506-2017878
- Fax: +506-2015098
- Web: www.zyxel.co.cr
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Costa Rica, Plaza Roble Escazú, Etapa El Patio, Tercer Piso, San José, Costa Rica

Czech Republic

- E-mail: info@cz.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +420-241-091-350
- Fax: +420-241-091-359
- Web: www.zyxel.cz
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, Czech s.r.o., Modranská 621, 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany, Česká Republika

Denmark

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.dk
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.dk
- Telephone: +45-39-55-07-00
- Fax: +45-39-55-07-07
- Web: www.zyxel.dk
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Columbusvej, 2860 Soeborg, Denmark

Finland

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.fi
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.fi
- Telephone: +358-9-4780-8411
- Fax: +358-9-4780-8448
- Web: www.zyxel.fi
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Oy, Malminkaari 10, 00700 Helsinki, Finland

France

- E-mail: info@zyxel.fr
- Telephone: +33-4-72-52-97-97
- Fax: +33-4-72-52-19-20
- Web: www.zyxel.fr
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL France, 1 rue des Vergers, Bat. 1 / C, 69760 Limonest, France

Germany

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.de
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.de
- Telephone: +49-2405-6909-69
- Fax: +49-2405-6909-99
- Web: www.zyxel.de
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH., Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146, Wuerselen, Germany

Hungary

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.hu
- Sales E-mail: info@zyxel.hu
- Telephone: +36-1-3361649
- Fax: +36-1-3259100
- Web: www.zyxel.hu
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Hungary, 48, Zoldlomb Str., H-1025, Budapest, Hungary

India

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.in
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.in
- Telephone: +91-11-30888144 to +91-11-30888153
- Fax: +91-11-30888149, +91-11-26810715
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.in>
- Regular Mail: India - ZyXEL Technology India Pvt Ltd., II-Floor, F2/9 Okhla Phase -1, New Delhi 110020, India

Japan

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.co.jp
- Sales E-mail: zyp@zyxel.co.jp
- Telephone: +81-3-6847-3700
- Fax: +81-3-6847-3705
- Web: www.zyxel.co.jp
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Japan, 3F, Office T&U, 1-10-10 Higashi-Gotanda, Shinagawa-ku, Tokyo 141-0022, Japan

Kazakhstan

- Support: <http://zyxel.kz/support>
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.kz
- Telephone: +7-3272-590-698
- Fax: +7-3272-590-689
- Web: www.zyxel.kz
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Kazakhstan, 43 Dostyk Ave., Office 414, Dostyk Business Centre, 050010 Almaty, Republic of Kazakhstan

Malaysia

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com.my
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com.my
- Telephone: +603-8076-9933
- Fax: +603-8076-9833
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.com.my>
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Malaysia Sdn Bhd., 1-02 & 1-03, Jalan Kenari 17F, Bandar Puchong Jaya, 47100 Puchong, Selangor Darul Ehsan, Malaysia

North America

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com
- Support Telephone: +1-800-978-7222
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com
- Sales Telephone: +1-714-632-0882
- Fax: +1-714-632-0858
- Web: www.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications Inc., 1130 N. Miller St., Anaheim, CA 92806-2001, U.S.A.

Norway

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.no
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.no
- Telephone: +47-22-80-61-80
- Fax: +47-22-80-61-81
- Web: www.zyxel.no
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Nils Hansens vei 13, 0667 Oslo, Norway

Poland

- E-mail: info@pl.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +48-22-333 8250
- Fax: +48-22-333 8251
- Web: www.pl.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, ul. Okrzei 1A, 03-715 Warszawa, Poland

Russia

- Support: <http://zyxel.ru/support>
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.ru
- Telephone: +7-095-542-89-29
- Fax: +7-095-542-89-25
- Web: www.zyxel.ru
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Russia, Ostrovityanova 37a Str., Moscow 117279, Russia

Singapore

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com.sg
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com.sg
- Telephone: +65-6899-6678
- Fax: +65-6899-8887
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.com.sg>
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Singapore Pte Ltd., No. 2 International Business Park, The Strategy #03-28, Singapore 609930

Spain

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.es
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.es
- Telephone: +34-902-195-420
- Fax: +34-913-005-345
- Web: www.zyxel.es
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications, Arte, 21 5ª planta, 28033 Madrid, Spain

Sweden

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.se
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.se
- Telephone: +46-31-744-7700
- Fax: +46-31-744-7701
- Web: www.zyxel.se
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications A/S, Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg, Sweden

Taiwan

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.com.tw
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.com.tw
- Telephone: +886-2-27399889
- Fax: +886-2-27353220
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.com.tw>
- Address: Room B, 21F., No.333, Sec. 2, Dunhua S. Rd., Da-an District, Taipei

Thailand

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.co.th
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.th
- Telephone: +662-831-5315
- Fax: +662-831-5395
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.co.th>
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Thailand Co., Ltd., 1/1 Moo 2, Ratchaphruk Road, Bangrak-Noi, Muang, Nonthaburi 11000, Thailand.

Turkey

- Support E-mail: cso@zyxel.com.tr
- Telephone: +90 212 222 55 22
- Fax: +90-212-220-2526
- Web: <http://www.zyxel.com.tr>
- Address: Kaptanpasa Mahallesi Piyalepasa Bulvari Ortadogu Plaza N:14/13 K:6 Okmeydani/Sisli Istanbul/Turkey

Ukraine

- Support E-mail: support@ua.zyxel.com
- Sales E-mail: sales@ua.zyxel.com
- Telephone: +380-44-247-69-78
- Fax: +380-44-494-49-32
- Web: www.ua.zyxel.com
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Ukraine, 13, Pimonenko Str., Kiev 04050, Ukraine

United Kingdom

- Support E-mail: support@zyxel.co.uk
- Sales E-mail: sales@zyxel.co.uk
- Telephone: +44-1344-303044, 0845 122 0301 (UK only)
- Fax: +44-1344-303034
- Web: www.zyxel.co.uk
- Regular Mail: ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK)

Index

A

access [34](#)
 access point [34](#)
 access privileges [36](#)
 address assignment [157](#)
 address filtering [33](#)
 administrator authentication on RADIUS [100](#)
 Advanced Encryption Standard
 See AES.
 AES [308](#)
 alternative subnet mask notation [321](#)
 antenna [277](#)
 directional [311](#)
 gain [311](#)
 omni-directional [311](#)
 AP [33](#), [34](#), [35](#), [159](#), [301](#)
 AP controller [83](#)
 AP+Bridge [33](#), [35](#)
 applications [33](#)
 Access Point [34](#)
 AP/Bridge [36](#)
 Bridge/Repeater [34](#)
 MBSSID [36](#)
 ATC [107](#), [145](#)
 ATC+WMM [145](#)
 ATM [107](#)
 authentication server [33](#)
 auto configuration [327](#)
 auto configuration status [330](#)

B

backup [232](#)
 Basic Service Set [105](#)
 see BSS
 bridge [34](#), [35](#)
 Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) [111](#)
 Bridge/Repeater [33](#), [34](#)
 BSS [36](#), [105](#), [299](#)
 BSSID [33](#)

C

CA [306](#)
 CAPWAP [79](#), [83](#)
 Certificate Authority
 See CA.
 certificates [178](#)
 thumbprint algorithms [184](#)
 thumbprints [184](#)
 verifying fingerprints [184](#)
 certifications [335](#)
 notices [336](#)
 viewing [337](#)
 channel [34](#), [301](#)
 interference [301](#)
 CI commands [264](#)
 Class of Service (CoS) [109](#)
 collision [252](#)
 command interface [38](#)
 command interpreter [263](#)
 community [247](#)
 configuration [33](#)
 configuration file
 examples [330](#)
 format [329](#)
 configuration file rules [329](#)
 contact information [339](#)
 Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points
 See CAPWAP
 copyright [335](#)
 CoS [109](#)
 CPU load [252](#)
 CTS (Clear to Send) [302](#)
 customer support [339](#)

D

default [234](#)
 DFS [112](#)
 DHCP [254](#)
 diagnostic [255](#)
 diagnostic tools [251](#)
 Differentiated Services [109](#)

DiffServ [109](#)
DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) [109](#)
DiffServ Code Points [109](#)
DiffServ marking rule [110](#)
disclaimer [335](#)
Distribution System [106](#)
DS field [109](#)
DSCPs [109](#)
Dynamic Frequency Selection [112](#)
dynamic WEP key exchange [307](#)

E

EAP [123](#), [124](#)
EAP authentication [305](#)
encryption [36](#), [125](#), [308](#)
error log [254](#)
error/information messages
 sample [255](#)
ESS [106](#), [300](#)
ESS IDentification [106](#)
ESSID [275](#)
Extended Service Set [106](#)
 see ESS
Extended Service Set IDentification [114](#), [116](#), [141](#)

F

FCC interference statement [335](#)
file version [329](#)
filename conventions [257](#)
filtering [33](#)
firmware file
 maintenance [230](#)
flow control [237](#)
fragmentation threshold [302](#)
friendly AP list [162](#)
FTP [38](#), [165](#), [167](#), [269](#)
 restrictions [165](#), [269](#)

G

general setup [99](#), [243](#)
guest SSID [37](#)

H

hidden menus [241](#)
hidden node [301](#)
honeypot attack [160](#)
host [101](#)
humidity [278](#)

I

IANA [326](#)
IBSS [299](#)
IEEE 802.11g [303](#)
IEEE 802.1x [33](#)
in-band management [213](#)
Independent Basic Service Set [230](#)
 see IBSS
initial screen [237](#)
initialization vector (IV) [308](#)
installation [33](#)
interference [34](#)
internal authentication server [33](#)
Internet access [245](#)
Internet Assigned Numbers Authority
 See IANA
Internet security gateway [33](#)
Internet telephony [37](#)
IP address [157](#), [158](#), [246](#), [254](#), [256](#), [279](#)
IPSec VPN capability [279](#)
isolation [33](#)

L

layer-2 isolation [33](#), [37](#)
LEDs [39](#)
link type [252](#)
log and trace [255](#)
log descriptions [204](#)
login screen [238](#)
logs [201](#)

M

MAC address [33](#), [152](#)

MAC address filter action [154](#)
 MAC filter [37](#), [123](#), [152](#)
 MAC filtering [279](#)
 MAC service data unit [94](#), [114](#), [115](#), [119](#), [141](#)
 main menu [241](#)
 maintenance [33](#)
 management [33](#)
 management AP [83](#)
 Management Information Base (MIB) [170](#)
 management VLAN [213](#)
 managing the device
 good habits [38](#)
 using FTP. See FTP.
 using Telnet. See command interface.
 using the command interface. See command interface.
 max age [111](#)
 MBSSID [33](#), [36](#)
 Message Integrity Check (MIC) [308](#)
 mobile access [33](#)
 mode [33](#)
 models covered [33](#)
 MSDU [94](#), [114](#), [115](#), [119](#), [141](#)

N

NAT [326](#)
 network [33](#)
 network access [33](#)
 network bridge [34](#)
 network traffic [33](#)

O

operating mode [33](#)
 out-of-band management [213](#)

P

packets [252](#)
 Pairwise Master Key (PMK) [308](#), [309](#)
 password [100](#), [238](#), [239](#), [247](#), [279](#)
 path cost [111](#)
 Per-Hop Behavior [109](#)
 PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [110](#)

ping [256](#)
 PoE [282](#)
 power specification [277](#)
 power specifications [282](#)
 preamble mode [303](#)
 pre-configured profiles [37](#)
 priorities [107](#)
 prioritization [33](#)
 private IP address [157](#)
 product registration [337](#)
 PSK [308](#)

Q

QoS [33](#), [145](#)
 Quick Start Guide [43](#)

R

radio [34](#)
 RADIUS [304](#)
 message types [305](#)
 messages [305](#)
 shared secret key [305](#)
 rapid STP [110](#)
 RAS [254](#)
 rate
 receiving [252](#)
 transmission [252](#)
 reauthentication time [131](#), [132](#), [133](#), [134](#), [135](#)
 registration
 product [337](#)
 related documentation [3](#)
 remote management limitations [165](#), [269](#)
 remote management setup [267](#)
 remote node [252](#)
 repeater [34](#)
 required fields [241](#)
 restore [233](#)
 restore configuration [260](#)
 RF interference [34](#)
 roaming [154](#)
 requirements [155](#)
 rogue AP [33](#), [159](#), [160](#), [161](#), [162](#), [163](#)
 rogue AP list [163](#)
 root bridge [111](#)
 RTS (Request To Send) [302](#)

threshold [301, 302](#)
RTS/CTS handshake [94, 114, 115, 119, 141](#)

S

safety warnings [6](#)
screws [280](#)
security [34](#)
security profiles [33](#)
server [33](#)
Service Set [114, 116, 141](#)
Service Set Identifier
 see SSID
SMT [240](#)
SMT menu overview [240](#)
SNMP [169, 280](#)
 community [247](#)
 configuration [247](#)
 manager [170](#)
 MIBs [170](#)
 traps [171](#)
 trusted host [247](#)
 version 3 and security [172](#)
Spanning Tree Protocol [110](#)
specifications [282](#)
SSID [36](#)
 hide SSID [123](#)
SSID profile [143](#)
 pre-configured [37](#)
SSID profiles [36, 37](#)
STP [110](#)
STP - how it works [111](#)
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) [279](#)
STP path costs [111](#)
STP port states [112](#)
STP terminology [111](#)
subnet [319](#)
subnet mask [246, 254, 279, 320](#)
subnetting [322](#)
syntax conventions [4](#)
system
 console port speed [254](#)
 diagnostic [255](#)
 log and trace [254](#)
 system information [253](#)
 system status [251](#)
 time and date [265](#)
system information [253](#)
system information & diagnosis [251](#)
system maintenance [251, 253, 259, 261, 263, 265](#)

system name [99](#)
system timeout [165, 269](#)

T

tagged VLAN example [213](#)
TCP/IP [256, 267](#)
telnet [166, 266](#)
telnet configuration [266, 267](#)
telnet under NAT [267](#)
temperature [278](#)
Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) [308](#)
terminal emulation [237](#)
text file based auto configuration [280, 327](#)
TFTP
 restrictions [269](#)
TFTP file transfer [261](#)
TFTP restrictions [165](#)
time and date setting [265](#)
time setting [102](#)
time zone [266](#)
time-sensitive [33](#)
ToS [109](#)
trace records [254](#)
trademarks [335](#)
traffic security [33](#)
Type of Service [109](#)

U

use [33](#)
user authentication [125](#)

V

Virtual Local Area Network [209](#)
VLAN [209](#)
VoIP [33, 37, 145](#)
VoIP SSID [37](#)
VT100 [237](#)

W

- warranty [337](#)
 - note [337](#)
- wcfg command [330](#)
- WDS [34](#), [36](#), [116](#)
- web [168](#)
- web configurator [33](#), [43](#), [45](#)
- WEP [33](#)
- WEP encryption [123](#), [130](#)
- Wi-Fi Multimedia QoS [107](#)
- Wi-Fi Protected Access [33](#), [307](#)
- wired network [33](#), [34](#)
- wireless channel [275](#)
- wireless client WPA supplicants [128](#), [309](#)
- Wireless Distribution System (WDS) [36](#)
- wireless Internet connection [34](#)
- wireless LAN [275](#)
- wireless security [36](#), [123](#), [275](#), [303](#)
- WLAN
 - interference [301](#)
 - security parameters [310](#)
- WLAN interface [34](#)
- WMM [145](#)
- WPA [33](#), [124](#), [307](#)
 - key caching [308](#)
 - pre-authentication [308](#)
 - user authentication [308](#)
 - vs WPA-PSK [308](#)
 - wireless client supplicant [309](#)
 - with RADIUS application example [309](#)
- WPA with RADIUS application [126](#)
- WPA2 [33](#), [307](#)
 - user authentication [308](#)
 - vs WPA2-PSK [308](#)
 - wireless client supplicant [309](#)
 - with RADIUS application example [309](#)
- WPA2-Pre-Shared Key [307](#)
- WPA2-PSK [307](#), [308](#)
 - application example [309](#)
- WPA-PSK [307](#), [308](#)
 - application example [309](#)

Z

- ZyNOS [258](#)
- ZyNOS F/W version [258](#)

